

RESOURCES AND DEVELOPMENT

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [1 MARK]

- 1. What do you understand by a ‘Resource’? Give examples.**

Answer:

Everything available in our environment which can be used to satisfy our needs, is called a resource. It should be technologically accessible, economically feasible and culturally acceptable. Only then, it can be termed as a ‘Resource’. Examples are: minerals, forests, fossil fuels etc..

- 2. In what broad category do the soils of Maharashtra fall?**

Answer:

Black soil region also known as regur soils.

- 3. Name the relief feature occupying the largest area, along with its percentage share in the total area.**

Answer:

Plains occupy the largest area having 43% share in the total area.

- 4. What do you understand by ‘sustainable economic development’?**

Answer:

Sustainable economic development means that ‘development should take place without damaging the environment and development in the present should not compromise with the needs of future generation.’

- 5. What are international resources?**

Answers:

International resources are the resources which belong to all human race and cannot be used by any country without an agreement with international institutions.

- 6. To what distance do the territorial waters of India extend?**

Answers:

The territorial waters of India extend upto 12 nautical miles (22.2 km) from the coast.

- 7. Where was the first International Earth Summit held?**

Answers: The first International Earth Summit was held at Rio de Janeiro, in Brazil.

- 8. When was Rio de Janeiro Summit held?**

Answers: Rio de Janeiro was held in 1992.

- 9. What is the full form of UNCED?**

Answers: United Nations Conference on Environment and Development.

- 10. What is resource planning?**

Answers: Judicious use of resources is known as resource planning.

- 11. What is the area brought under cultivation in a year called?**

Answers: Net sown area.

- 12. Name the most widespread relief feature of India.**

Answers: Plains are the most widespread relief feature of India. They form 43 per cent of the land area.

13. What factor is responsible for maximum land degradation?

Answers: Human activities.

14. According to the National Forest Policy, what should be the percentage of forest area in a country?

Answers: 33%

15. What is bangar?

Answers: Old alluvial soil is called bangar.

16. What term is used to identify the old and new alluvial respectively?

Answers:

Old alluvial is called bangar and new alluvial is called khadar.

17. What soil is the best for cotton cultivation?

Answers: Black soil

18. What gives red and yellow colour to red and yellow soil?

Answers:

Red and yellow soil develops a reddish colour due to diffusion of iron in crystalline and metamorphic rocks. It looks yellow when it occurs in a hydrated form.

19. What is the name of the soil formed by intense leaching?

Answers: Laterite soil

20. What type of soil is suitable for crops like cashewnuts?

Answers:

Laterite soil with adequate doses of manures and fertilizers is suitable for crops like cashewnuts.

21. Where does the laterite soil develop?

Answers: Laterite soil develops in areas with high temperature and heavy rainfall.

22. What type of soil develops due to high temperature and evaporation?

Answers: Arid Soil

23. Name the natural forces which lead to soil erosion.

Answers: The natural forces which lead to soil erosion are wind, glacier and water.

24. What are gullies?

Answers:

The running water cuts through clayey soils and makes deep channels, called gullies.

25. What are badlands?

Answers:

Due to the formation of gullies, the land becomes unfit for cultivation and is known as badland.

26. What is a ravine?

Answers: A ravine is a deep narrow valley on earth's surface formed by running water.

27. What is sheet erosion?

Answers:

Sometimes water flows as a sheet over large area down the slope. In such cases the top soil washes away. It is called sheet erosion.

28. What is responsible for sheet erosion?

Answers: Water

29. What method is used to break up the force of wind?

Answers: Strip Cropping

30. Which is a special feature of the sustainable development?

Answers: Development should take place without damaging the environment.

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [3 MARKS]

31. “Resources are a function of human activities.” Justify this statement.

Answer:

Mere presence of resources, as free gifts of nature, does not make them resources. Human beings are essential components of resources because they transform material available in our environment into resources. The utility of resources depends on the stage of cultural development of man and the tools and technology used by him.

32. Write the classification of resources on four different bases.

Answer:

Resources can be classified in the following four ways:

(a) On the basis of Origin:

- Biotic
- Abiotic

(b) On the basis of exhaustibility:

- Renewable
- Non-renewable

(c) On the basis of ownership:

- Individual (Personal)
- Community
- National
- International

(d) On the basis of status and development:

- Potential
- Developed
- Reserve
- Stock

33. Explain the classification of resources on the basis of origin and give one example of each.

Answer:

On the basis of origin, resources can be classified as Biotic and Abiotic.

Biotic Resources are obtained from the biosphere. They have life or are living resources, e.g., human beings, fisheries, forests, etc.

Abiotic Resources include all non-living things, e.g., rocks and minerals.

34. Classify the resources on the basis of exhaustibility and give two examples of each.

Answer:

On the basis of exhaustibility, resources can be classified as: Renewable and Non-renewable.

Renewable Resources. The resources which can be renewed or reproduced by physical, chemical and mechanical processes are known as renewable or replenishable resources, e.g., water, wildlife, forests, solar energy, wind energy etc.

Non-renewable Resources. The resources which once get exhausted, cannot be remade. They take a long geological period of time, i.e., millions of years in their formation, e.g., minerals, fossil fuels etc.

35. Write two types of renewable resources and give one example of each type.

Answer:

Two types of renewable resources are as follows:

Continuous or Flow Resources, e.g., wind and water resources.

Biological Resources, e.g., natural vegetation (forests) and wildlife.

36. Write two characteristics of non-renewable resources and write their two broad categories with examples.

Answer:

Two characteristics of non-renewable resources:

- They cannot be recycled and get exhausted with their use.
- They take millions of years in their formation.

Two broad categories of non-renewable resources:

- Recyclable resources, e.g., metals.
- Non-recyclable resources, e.g., fossil fuels.

37. Give any two examples of non-renewable resources.

Answer:

Non-renewable resources are resources which once get exhausted, cannot be remade. They take a long geological period of time, i.e., millions of years, in their formation, e.g., minerals, fossil fuels, etc.

38. Explain four types of resources based on ownership and give one example of each type.

Answer:

On the basis of ownership, there are four types of resources:

Individual Resources. Resources, which are owned privately by individuals, e.g., farmers own pieces of land or houses. Plantation, pasture lands, water in wells are some resources owned by individuals.

Community Owned Resources. These resources are accessible to all the members of the community, e.g., village ponds, public parks, playgrounds in urban areas are accessible to all the residents of that area.

National Resources. All the resources within the political boundary of a nation including the territorial water (oceanic area upto 12 nautical miles from the coast) extending into the ocean and resources therein belong to the nation, e.g., all minerals, forests, wildlife, water resources, land etc.

International Resources. There are international institutions which own and regulate some resources, e.g., The oceanic resources beyond 200 km of the Exclusive Economic Zone belong to the open ocean and no individual country can utilise these without the concurrence of international institutions.

39. Name the categories under which natural resources can be grouped on the basis of state of development.

Answer:

- Potential Resources
- Developed Resources
- Stock
- Reserves.

40. How are natural resources important for man? Give five points.

Answer:

Importance of resources for man:

- Resources are vital for human survival.
- They are important for maintaining the quality of life as man has been using the bio-physical environment to satisfy his needs.
- Natural resources form the backbone of the economy of a nation.
- These are the bases for economic strength and prosperity of the people.
- They provide material, energy and favourable conditions for development.

41. List the problems which resulted due to indiscriminate use of resources by man.

Answer:

- It has resulted in depletion of many resources.
- Accumulation of resources in few hands which, in turn, divided the society in two segments, i.e., haves and have-nots or rich and poor.
- It has led to the global ecological crisis, e.g., global warming, ozone layer depletion, environmental pollution, land degradation, etc.

42. "Resource planning is essential for sustainable existence." Discuss.

Answer:

Sustainable existence is a component of sustainable development which aims at development without damaging the environment and at the same time conserving for future generation. Therefore, resource planning is necessary for judicious, rational and equitable distribution and proper utilisation of resources. It has become essential for a sustained quality of life and global peace.

43. Why is 'Resource Planning' necessary? Give reasons.

Answer:

Planning is necessary for proper and judicious utilisation of resources.

Reasons for resource planning:

- Resource availability is not the same in all parts of the country.
- Resources, especially non-renewable resources, need extra care as they cannot be renewed.
- There is acute shortage or deficiency of some resources.
- Resource planning helps in proper utilisation of resources by reducing wastage. It takes care of future needs and may sustain the environment.

44. "India has enormous diversity in the availability of resources." Name four varied regions to justify this statement.

Answer:

There are regions which are rich or self-sufficient in certain types of resources and there are areas that are deficient or have acute shortage of some vital resources.

For example:

The states of Jharkhand, Chhattisgarh and Madhya Pradesh are rich in minerals and coal deposits.

Arunachal Pradesh has abundance of water resources but lacks in infrastructural development.

Rajasthan is very well endowed with solar and wind energy but lacks in water resources.

The cold desert area of Ladakh has very rich cultural heritage. It is deficient in water, infrastructure and some vital minerals.

Such cases call for balanced resource planning at different levels.

45. Explain three stages of 'resource planning.'

Answer:

Three stages of resource planning:

- Identification and inventory of resources across the regions of the country. This involves surveying, mapping and the qualitative and quantitative estimation and measurement of the resources.
- Evolving a planning structure endowed with appropriate technology, skill and institutional set up for implementing resource development plan
- Matching the resource development plans with overall national development plan.

46. Write four factors which determine resource development in a region.

Answer:

Four factors involved in the development of resources are:

- Availability of resources
- Level of technology
- Quality of human resources
- Historical experiences of the people

47. What do you understand by ‘conservation of resources’? Why is it necessary to conserve our resources? Give three reasons.

Answer:

Conservation is judicious and planned use of natural resources for sustainable benefit to the present generation. It also maintains a potential to meet the needs and aspirations of future generations.

Three reasons for conservation:

- Our resources are limited in nature, therefore they have to be frugally used.
- Many of the resources are non-renewable in nature, therefore extra care has to be taken.
- Their conservation is necessary for our own sustenance and for the ongoing economic developmental processes.

48. Explain the concept of resource conservation as voiced by Gandhiji.

Or

Whom did Gandhiji make responsible for the depletion of resources at the global level?

Answer:

Gandhiji voiced his concern about resource conservation in these Words: “There is enough for everybody’s need and not for anybody’s greed.” He placed the greedy and selfish individuals as the root cause for resource depletion at the global level. He was against ‘mass production’ and wanted to replace it with ‘production by the masses’.

Indiscriminate use of resources by human beings has led to the depletion of resources for satisfying the greed of few individuals.

Irrational consumption and over-utilization of resources leads to socio-economic and environmental problems.

49. Write four institutional efforts made at global level for ‘resource conservation’.

Answer:

- At the international level, the Club of Rome advocated resource conservation for the first time in a more systematic way in 1968.
- In 1974, the Gandhian Philosophy was presented once again by Schumacher in his book “Small is Beautiful”.
- Brundtland Commission Report in 1987, introduced the concept of ‘sustainable development’ and advocated it as a means for resource conservation. This was subsequently published in a book entitled “Our Common Future”.
- In June 1992, the first ‘International Earth Summit’ was held in Rio de Janeiro in Brazil, in which 100 heads of States met for addressing urgent problems of environmental protection and socio-economic development at the global level.

50. Write the major features of Rio de Janeiro Earth Summit, 1992.

Answer:

- In 1992, 100 heads of States met in Rio de Janeiro in Brazil, for the first 'International Earth Summit'.
- The summit was convened for addressing urgent problems of environmental protection and socio-economic development at global level.
- The assembled leaders signed the Declaration on Global Climatic Change and the Biological Diversity.
- The Rio convention endorsed the global Forest Principles and adopted 'Agenda 21' for achieving sustainable development in the 21st century. It is an agenda to combat environmental damage, poverty and diseases through global co-operation on common interests, mutual needs and shared responsibilities.

51. Why is land as a resource important for us? Write four points.

Answer:

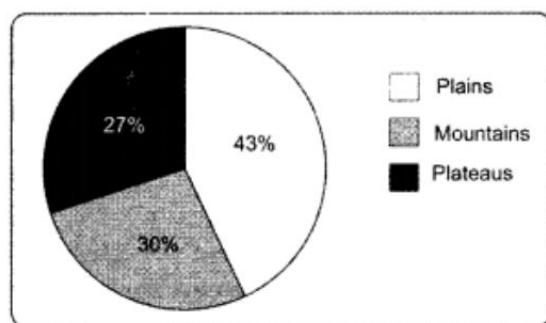
- 95% of our basic needs of food, clothing and shelter are derived from land.
- We live on land and use it in different ways, e.g. for agriculture, for transport and communication systems, etc.
- We perform our economic activities on land.
- It supports natural vegetation, wildlife and human life.

52. Why land-use should be done in a planned manner? Write two points.

Answer:

- Land is a fixed asset.
- As land is used for varied purposes and activities and for human sustenance, therefore it is important to use the available land for various purposes with careful planning.

53. Look at the picture and name three major relief features of India and their respective share in the total area.



Answer:

Three major relief features:

1. Plains — 43%
2. Mountains — 30%
3. Plateaus — 27%

54. Name three main relief features of India and write the importance of each.

Answer: Relief Features and their Importance /Uses

1. Plains
 - (i) provide facilities for agriculture.
 - (ii) provide facilities for industrial development.
 - (iii) because of their level, nature and ease of construction, plains support huge population of the country.
2. Mountains
 - (i) ensure perennial flow of some rivers and many rivers rise from them.

- (ii) provide facilities for tourism.
 - (iii) are important from ecological point of view, e.g. have lot of forest wealth and wildlife.
3. Plateaus
- (i) possess rich reserves of minerals.
 - (ii) contain lot of fossil fuels, especially coal.
 - (iii) possess rich forest cover.

55. Distinguish between each of the following:

- (a) Current fallow and other than current fallow land
- (b) Waste-land and culturable waste-land
- (c) Net sown area and gross cropped area.

Answer:

- (a) Current fallow land. Land left without cultivation for one or less than one agricultural year.
Other than current fallow land. Land left uncultivated for the past one to five agricultural years.
- (b) Waste land. It includes rocky, arid and desert areas which are lying waste at the moment.
Culturable waste land. Arable land which is left uncultivated for more than five agricultural years.
- (c) Net Sown Area. It is the total area under cultivation.
Gross Cropped Area. Area sown more than once in an agricultural year plus net sown area.

56. What do you understand by ‘reported area’? What is the reported area of India and why?

Give two major reasons.

Answer:

The percentage of total area for which land-use statistics (data) are available, is termed as ‘reported area’. India’s reported area is 93%.

Reasons:

- Because the land-use reporting for most of the north-eastern states, except Assam, has not been done.
- Some areas of Jammu and Kashmir occupied by Pakistan and China have not been surveyed.

57. Write three physical and three human factors which determine the use of land.

Answer:

Physical Factors:

- Topography
- Climate
- Soil types

Human Factors:

- Population density
- Technological capability
- Culture and traditions

58. Why are the other than current fallow-lands cultivated once or twice in about two to three years? Give two reasons.

Answer:

Two reasons are:

- These lands may be of poor quality.
- The cost of cultivation of such lands is very high.

59. “The pattern of net sown area varies greatly from one state to another.”

OR

Name two states having high net sown area and two states having low net sown area. Give two reasons for each.

Answer:

Punjab and Haryana are two states, which have more than 80% of their total area as N.S.A. (Net Sown Area) because:

- They are agriculturally rich States because of favourable climatic conditions for the growth of crops and levelled fertile nature of land.
- Irrigation facilities are well-developed here.

States with low N.S.A. i.e., less than 10% are Arunachal Pradesh and Mizoram because:

- The nature of land is hilly and forested, therefore availability of arable land is less.
- Economic backwardness and climatic conditions also do not encourage large scale agricultural activities.

60. According to National Forest Policy, how much of the country's area should be under forest cover and why? Give two considerations for this norm. Have we been able to meet this norm?

Answer:

According to National Forest Policy, 33% of the country's total area should be under forest cover.
Reasons:

- It is considered essential for the maintenance of ecological balance.
- The livelihood of millions of people who live on the fringe of these forests depends on these forests.

We have 22.57% area under forests which is far lower than the desired 33% of geographical area, as outlined by National Forest Policy.

61. Write six human activities which have caused land degradation.

Answer:

- Deforestation
- Overgrazing
- Mining activities — mining sites are abandoned after excavation leaving deep scars and traces of over-burdening.
- Mineral processing produces large quantities of dust in the atmosphere, which on settling down on land, retards the process of infiltration of water into the soil.
- Over-irrigation leads to waterlogging which increases salinity and alkalinity in the soil.
- Industrial effluents — such wastes cause land and water pollution.

62. Distinguish between biotic and abiotic resources by stating four points.

Answer:

Difference between biotic and abiotic resources

Biotic resources	Abiotic resources
(i) The resources which are obtained from biosphere are biotic resources.	(i) All those things which are composed of non-living things are called abiotic resources.
(ii) They have life.	(ii) They do not have life.
(iii) These include flora and fauna, fisheries, livestock, human beings, etc.	(iii) These include rocks, metals, land, air, mountains, rivers, etc.
(iv) Minerals such as coal and petroleum are included in this category because they were formed from decayed organic matter.	(iv) Minerals such as gold, iron, copper, silver, etc. come in this category.

63. Name three states each in which land degradation is caused due to

- over-irrigation
- over-grazing

- deforestation due to mining activities

Answer:

- Three states where over-irrigation has resulted in land degradation are Punjab, Haryana and Western Uttar Pradesh.
- Due to over-grazing. Gujarat, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh and Maharashtra.
- Deforestation due to mining activities has led to land degradation in Jharkhand, Chhattisgarh, Madhya Pradesh.

64. What is soil? How is it an important resource for us?

Answer:

Soil is the uppermost layer of the earth's crust which is loose, fragmented and fine. It is rich in both organic (humus) and inorganic materials and supports plant growth.

Soil is a living system. It takes millions of years to form soil upto a few cm in depth.

It is an important resource because:

- It is the medium of plant growth.
- It supports different types of living organisms on earth.

65. Write the main factors responsible for soil formation.

Answer:

Soil is a living system. It takes millions of years to form soil up to a few centimeters in depth.

Factors responsible for soil formation are:

- Parent rock or bed rock on which the soils are formed, disintegrate and decompose under the process of weathering and erosion.
- Climate: It determines the rate of weathering.
- Relief, vegetation, other forms of life and time are other important factors in the formation of soils.
- Various forces of nature such as change in temperature, actions of running water, wind and glaciers, activities of decomposers etc. also contribute to the formation of soil.
- Chemical and organic changes which take place in soil, also play a role in its formation.

66. Write four factors which are responsible for varied types of soils in India.

Answer:

Factors:

- Varied relief features
- Varied land forms
- Varied climatic realms
- Varied vegetation types.

67. On what basis are soils classified into different types?

Answer:

Basis of classification of soils:

- Colour
- Thickness
- Texture
- Age
- Chemical and physical properties
- Factors responsible for soil formation.

68. Name six types of soils found in India. Which is the most widely spread soil? Name one major region where it is found.

Answer:

- Alluvial soil

- Red and yellow soil
- Black soil
- Laterite soil
- Arid soil
- Forest and mountainous soils

Alluvial soil is the most widely spread soil.

The entire northern plains are made of alluvial soil.

69. Write three regional/local names of areas where you find coarse alluvial soil and name one deltaic area which has fine alluvial soil.

Answer:

Coarse alluvial soil is more common in piedmont plains such as Duars, Chos and Terai. Fine alluvial soil is found in the eastern coastal plains in the deltas of Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna and Kaveri rivers.

70. Classify alluvial soils on the basis of their age. Write two characteristics of each.

Answer:

According to their age, alluvial soils are of two types: Bangar and Khadar.

Bangar

- (i) It is old alluvial soil.
- (ii) It has higher concentration of 'kankar' nodules.
- (iii) It is coarser and is found in the old river terraces.

Khadar

- (i) It is new alluvial soil.
- (ii) It has more fine particles.
- (iii) It is more fertile than 'Bangar' and is found in flood plains.

71. Write the main characteristics of alluvial soils.

Answer:

- Alluvial soils as a whole are very fertile. They consist of various proportions of sand, silt and clay.
- They contain adequate proportion of potash, lime and phosphoric acid. They are ideal for the growth of sugarcane, paddy, wheat and other cereal and pulse crops.
- Due to its high fertility, regions of alluvial soils are intensively cultivated and are densely populated.
- Soils in the drier areas are more alkaline and can be productive after proper treatment and irrigation.

72. Give the distribution of alluvial soils in brief.

Answer:

The entire northern plains are made up of alluvial soils.

- These have been deposited by three important Himalayan river systems
- the Indus, Ganga and Brahmaputra.
- These soils also extend into Rajasthan and Gujarat through a narrow corridor.
- These are also found in the eastern coastal plains in the deltas of the Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna and Kaveri rivers.

73. Write two factors which are responsible for the formation of black soils. Name four States where they are found. Name the crop mainly grown in it.

Answer:

Two factors are:

- The climatic conditions
- The parent rock material.

Four states in which black soils are found are: Maharashtra, Gujarat, Madhya Pradesh and Chhattisgarh. Black soil is ideal for growing cotton and is also called black cotton soil.

74. Write six characteristics of regur soils (black soils).

Answer:

- They are made up of extremely fine, i.e. clayey material.
- They have capacity to hold moisture that makes them ideal for growing cotton.
- They are rich in soil nutrients such as calcium carbonate, magnesium, potash and lime.
- These soils are generally poor in phosphoric contents.
- They develop deep cracks during dry hot weather, which helps in the proper aeration of soil.
- These soils are sticky when wet and difficult to work unless tilled immediately after the first shower.

75. Give the distribution of black/regur Soil.

Answer:

This soil is typical of the Deccan Trap region.

- It is spread over north west Deccan plateau and is made up of lava flows.
- This soil covers the plateaus of Maharashtra, Saurashtra, Malwa, Madhya Pradesh and Chhattisgarh and extends along the Godavari and Krishna Valleys.

76. Write the distribution of red and yellow soils. Give reasons for their colour.

OR

How does red soil develop and in which part of India? What makes it look red and yellow?

Answer:

In Eastern and Southern parts of Deccan plateau, red soils have developed on crystalline igneous rocks in areas of low rainfall. They are also found in parts of Orissa, Chhattisgarh, Southern parts of the middle Ganga Plains and along the piedmont zone of Western Ghats.

These soils develop a reddish colour due to diffusion of iron in crystalline and metamorphic rocks. It looks yellow when it occurs in a hydrated form.

77. Write six states which have laterite soils and name the important crops which grow well in these soils.

Answer:

Six states in which laterite soils are found: Karnataka, Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Madhya Pradesh and the hilly areas of Orissa and Assam.

Crops which grow well in these soils are: tea, coffee and cashew-nuts.

78. Write the main characteristics of arid soils.

Answer:

- Arid soils range from red to brown in colour.
- They have a sandy texture.
- They are saline in nature. In areas where salt content is high, common salt is obtained by evaporation.
- Arid soil lacks humus and is moisture deficient.
- The lower horizons of the soil have kankars because of high calcium content which restrict infiltration of water.
- Proper irrigation helps make these soils cultivable, e.g., Western Rajasthan.

79. Write the main features of forest soils. What are the different types of soils found in the hilly forested areas?

Answer:

Forest soils are mainly found in the hilly and mountainous areas where sufficient rain forests are available. The soil texture varies according to the mountain environment where they are formed. At least four types of soils can be seen in the hilly forested areas:

- They are loamy and silty in valley sides.
- They are coarse grained in upper slopes.
- They are highly denuded, acidic with low humus content in the snow covered areas.
- They are very fine and fertile in lower parts of the valley and on river terraces.

80. What is soil erosion? Write the main causes of soil erosion.

Answer:

The denudation of the soil cover and subsequent washing down is described as soil erosion. The process of soil formation and erosion goes on simultaneously and generally there is a balance between the two. This balance is sometimes disturbed, leading to soil erosion. The main activities like deforestation, over-grazing, construction and mining and also natural agents like wind, running water and glacier are the main causes of soil erosion.

81. Explain three types of soil erosion mostly observed in India. Mention human activities that are responsible for soil erosion.

Answer:

- Gully erosion
The running water cuts through the clayey soils and makes deep channels, called gullies. They make the land unfit for cultivation. Such lands are called 'Badlands'.
- Sheet erosion
Sometimes water flows as a sheet over large areas down a slope. In this case top layer of the soil is washed away.
- Wind erosion
Wind blows off loose and dry soil from flat and sloping land causing erosion.

82. Write the land area degraded by gully erosion and name five states where gully erosion is very pronounced.

Answer:

Approximately 40 lakh hectares of land area has degraded due to gully erosion.

Five states where gully erosion is quite pronounced are: Uttar Pradesh, Madhya Pradesh, Bihar, Rajasthan and Gujarat.

83. Write four methods of soil conservation.

Answer:

Methods of soil conservation:

- Contour ploughing By ploughing along the contour lines, water will not run down the slopes.
- Terrace cultivation Steps can be cut on the slopes to make terraces. This restricts erosion.
- Strip cropping Large fields can be divided into strips. Strips of grass are left to grow between the crops. This breaks the force of the wind.
- Planting of shelter belts The planting of trees in rows to create shelter also breaks the force of the wind and restricts soil erosion.
- Shelter belts have helped in the stabilisation of sand dunes and deserts.

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [5 MARKS]

84. Write four characteristics of laterite soils. Why are they called laterite?

Answer:

- They are highly leached soils.
- They develop in areas of heavy rainfall and high temperature.
- They have low 'humus' content, because most of the micro-organisms particularly decomposers like bacteria get destroyed due to high temperature.
- These soils can be cultivated with adequate doses of manure and fertilisers.
- The word laterite has been derived from the Latin word 'late/ which means brick. Since their colour is red and resembles brick colour, these soils are called laterite soils.

85. What is regur soil? Write its two features. Mention any two regions where regur soil is found.

Answer:

Regur soil is soil which is made up of extremely fine, i.e., clayey material.

Features:

- They have capacity to hold moisture that makes them ideal for growing cotton.
- They are rich in soil nutrients such as calcium carbonate, magnesium, potash and lime.
- These soils are generally poor in phosphoric contents.
- They develop deep cracks during dry hot weather, which helps in the proper aeration of soil.
- These soils are sticky when wet and difficult to work unless tilled immediately after the first shower.

Regions where regur soil is found:

- This soil is typical of the Deccan Trap region.
- It is spread over north west Deccan plateau and is made up of lava flows.
- This soil covers the plateaus of Maharashtra, Saurashtra, Malwa, Madhya Pradesh and Chhattisgarh and extends along the Godavari and Krishna Valleys.

86. "The future generation may not have sufficient resources as compared to the present generation". Justify the statement by giving suitable examples.

OR

Why is the issue of sustainability relevant for development?

Answer:

Present sources of energy in India are coal, petroleum, natural gas, solar energy, wind energy, hydel power, electricity, wood for fire, cow dung etc. Most of these are non-renewable sources of energy which may get exhausted after some time. These are available in limited quantities. The present rate of consumption is higher than the rate at which these resources are being replenished and should be preserved for our future generations.

In fifty years' time, India may depend largely on non-conventional sources of energy which are available in abundance such as solar energy, hydel energy, wind energy etc. The total hydel power potential in India is estimated at 1,50,000 MW of which only one-sixth has been developed so far.

- Development of a country needs to be continuous. Every country would like to have the level of development go up further.
- Many scientists have warned that the present levels of development cannot be sustained for the future as the present rate of consumption of both renewable and non-renewable resources is very high. Rapid industrialisation has led to environment degradation.
- Sustainability development aims at development without damaging the environment and at the same time conserving for the future.
- Sustainability of development is essential not only for the present generation but also for future generations to ensure a good life.

87. What is soil erosion? How do human activities and natural forces cause soil erosion?

Suggest measures of soil conservation in hilly, and mountainous areas and in desert areas.

Answer:

The denudation or destruction of the soil cover and their subsequent natural removal is termed soil erosion. Human activities as well as natural forces cause denudation of the top soil. The soil nutrients are subsequently washed away by running water or blown away by wind. Human activities like deforestation, overgrazing, construction and mining as well as faulty methods of farming lead to soil erosion. Natural forces like wind, water and glacier can cause soil erosion. Surface runoff leads to formation of gullies, badlands and ravines by cutting out channels in the soil. Entire topsoil may be washed off under the impact of sheet erosion caused by large water flows down a slope. Loose soil may be blown away by wind easily. In hilly and mountainous areas the following measures can help to control soil erosion:

- (a) Contour ploughing or ploughing along the contour lines of a high land can decelerate flow of water down the slopes.
- (b) Terrace cultivation or cutting of steps around the slopes to provide land for agriculture also checks downhill flow of water and controls soil erosion, e.g. as in Western and Central Himalayan region.
- (c) Afforestation can help in soil conservation in hilly areas. In dry desert areas, planting of rows of trees known as shelter belts to check velocity of wind can control soil erosion. These shelter belts have contributed significantly to the stabilisation of sand dunes and checking the spread of desert in Western India.

88. Distinguish between the following:

- 1. Potential and Developed Resources;**
- 2. Stock and Reserves.**

Answer:

1. Potential Resources. Resources which are found in a region, but have not been utilised, e.g. Gujarat and Rajasthan have a lot of potential for the development of wind and solar energy, but so far they have not been developed fully.

Developed Resources. Resources which are surveyed and their quality and quantity have been determined for utilisation. The development of resources depends on technology and level of their feasibility, e.g., water resources used for hydel power generation or irrigation purposes.

2. Stock. Materials in the environment, which have the potential to satisfy human needs but man does not have the appropriate technology to access them are included among stock, e.g. water is a compound of two inflammable gases: hydrogen and oxygen, which can be used as a rich Source of energy. But we do not have the required technical know-how to use them for this purpose.

Reserves. Reserves are the subset of the stock, which can be put into use with the help of existing technical ‘know-how’ but their full use has been postponed for meeting the future needs, e.g., forest reserves, iron-ore reserves, water in the dams etc.

89. What is land degradation? What is the area of degraded land in India? Name four types of waste-lands and their percentage share respectively.

Answer:

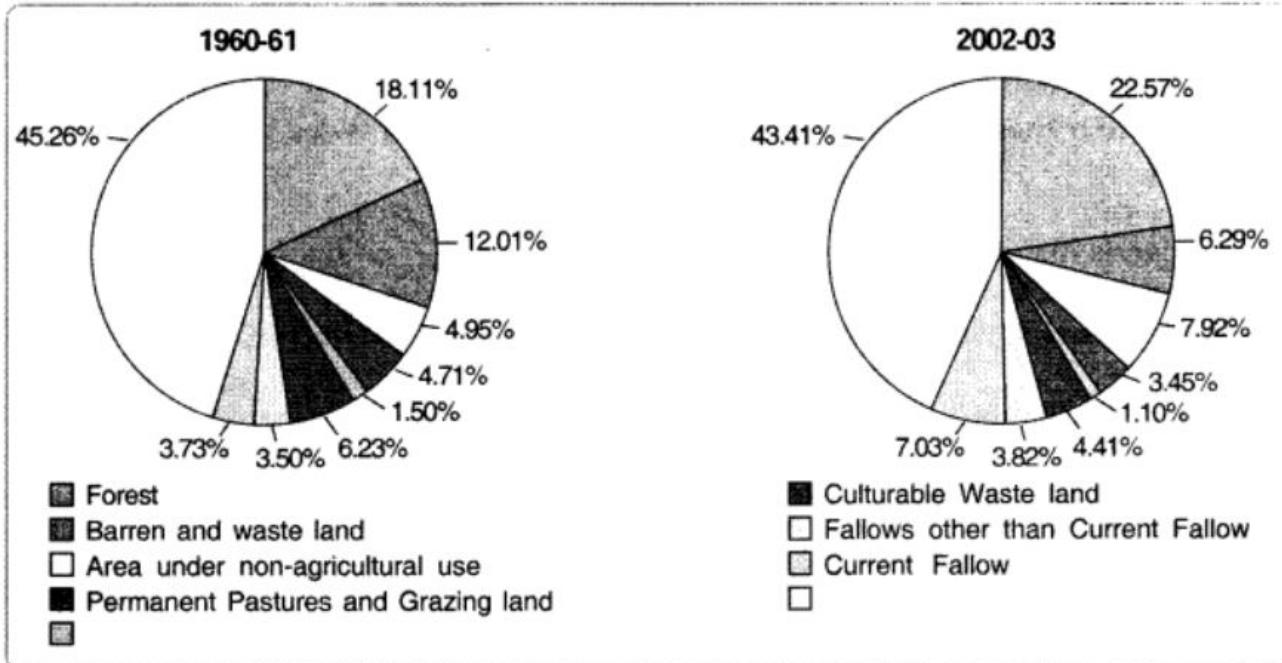
Damage to the land, bringing down its quality is called land degradation.

Continuous use of land over a long period of time without taking appropriate measures to conserve and manage it, results in land degradation. India has 130 million hectares of degraded land.

Four categories of waste-lands:

- Water eroded area .. 56%
- Forest degraded area .. 28%
- Wind eroded area .. 10%
- Saline and Alkaline land .. 6%

90. Look at the picture and explain the land-use pattern in India. Why has land under forest not increased much since 1960-61?



Answer:

The major land-use categories and their percentage share is:

- Net sown area, where regular agriculture is done — 43.41%.
- Forests, 22.57% of the total land is covered by forests.
- Barren and waste land — 6.29%.
- Area under non-agricultural use — 7.92%.
- Permanent pastures and grazing land — 3.45%.
- Area under miscellaneous tree crops and groves — 1.1%.
- Culturable waste land — 4.41 %
- Fallows other than current fallows — 3.82%
- Current fallow – 7.03%

The land under forests has increased marginally by about 4.46%. From 18.11% in 1960-61, it is still only 22.57% which is far lower than the desired 33% as outlined by the National Forest Policy (1952).

Reasons for marginal increase in forest area:

- increasing population
- technological developments
- expansion of agriculture
- development of transport and communication facilities
- overgrazing
- felling of trees

All these exert great pressure on land thus causing further depletion of forests.

91. “Planning is the widely accepted strategy for judicious use of resources in a country like India”. Justify this statement with two relevant points and an example.

Answer:

India has enormous diversity in the availability of resources. Through planning, regions which have shortage of vital resources and those having adequate quantities, receive equal attention.

There are regions which are rich in certain types of resources but are deficient in some other resources.

For example: Arunachal has abundance of water but lacks in infrastructural development.

There are some regions which can be considered self sufficient in terms of availability of resources. For example: The states of Jharkhand, Chhattisgarh and Madhya Pradesh are rich in minerals and coal deposits.

There are some regions which have acute shortage of some vital resources.

For example: The state of Rajasthan is well endowed with solar and wind energy but lacks in water resources.

92. Write some measures/ways to solve problems of land degradation.

Answer:

Measures to conserve land:

- Afforestation.
- Proper management of grazing to control over-grazing.
- Planting of shelter belts of plants.
- Stabilisation of sand dunes by growing thorny bushes.
- Control of mining activities.
- Proper discharge and disposal of industrial effluents and wastes after treatment.
- Proper management of waste-lands
- Avoid over-irrigation, especially in dry areas.
- Avoid overuse of fertilisers and pesticides.

93. Distinguish between red and laterite soils stating five points of distinction.

Answer:

Red soil	Laterite soil
(a) It is formed due to weathering of igneous and metamorphic rocks.	(a) It is formed by the leaching process in the tropical areas of heavy rainfall.
(b) It is highly porous and less fertile but where it is deep, it is fertile.	(b) It is less fertile, only grass grows on it in abundance.
(c) It is less crystalline.	(c) It is crystalline.
(d) It is red in colour due to the presence of iron in it.	(d) It is red in colour due to little clay and much gravel of red sandstones.
(e) It is found in parts of Tamil Nadu, Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh, Orissa and Jharkhand.	(e) It is found in hills of the Deccan, Karnataka, Kerala, Orissa, Assam and Meghalaya.

94. Give the importance of soil. Explain three factors responsible for soil formation.

Answer:

Soil is the medium of plant growth and supports different types of living organisms, including animals and human beings, by providing them with food for their survival.

Human existence and settlement is determined by soil fertility as it determines agricultural productivity of an area. Soil determines the natural vegetation and type of crop production of an area. It also influences the land use of an area. Areas of fertile soil are agriculturally productive and densely populated. It is one of the most important renewable natural resource. Relief, nature of parent rock or bedrock, climate, vegetation and other forms of life (especially decomposers) and time are important factors in the formation of soil.

The three most important factors of soil formation are:

- (a) Nature of parent rock influences the colour and texture of the soil. The mineral content of the soil also depends on the parent rock from which it is formed.
- (b) Climate influences the rate and types of weathering and erosion of the rocks. Weathering of the parent rocks due to climatic factors and natural forces lead to disintegration of rocks which leads to the formation of soil.

(c) Time determines maturity of the soil. The soil is a living system. It takes millions of years to form soil upto a few cm in depth.

95. How much land is degraded in India at present? Explain any four human activities which are mainly responsible for land degradation in India.

Answer:

At present, about 130 million hectares of land is degraded in India. Continuous use of land over a prolonged period of time without taking necessary steps to conserve and manage it, has resulted in land degradation. Four human activities responsible for land degradation in India are as follows:

(a) In states like Jharkhand, Chhattisgarh, Madhya Pradesh and Orissa deforestation due to mining have caused severe land degradation. Mining sites are dug, drilled and abandoned after excavation work is over, leaving the land overburdened and in a highly degraded state.

(b) Mineral processing like grinding of limestone for cement industry and calcite and soapstone for ceramic industry generate huge quantity of mineral dust in the atmosphere which ultimately settles down on the land. It retards the process of infiltration of water into the soil, thus, degrading the land. Discharge of industrial effluents and wastes cause pollution and land degradation in industrial regions.

(c) In states like Gujarat, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh and Maharashtra overgrazing is one of the main reasons for land degradation.

(d) In Punjab, Haryana and Western Uttar Pradesh overirrigation is responsible for land degradation. It leads to water logging which in turn increases salinity and alkalinity in the soil and reduces its fertility.

.....

Important Questions and Answers from Other Chapters

MINERALS AND ENERGY RESOURCES

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [1 MARK]

1. What are placer deposits?

Answer:

Certain mineral deposits that occur in sands of valley floors and the base of the hills as alluvial deposits are called placer deposits.

2. Which state of India is the largest producer of Bauxite?

Answer:

Odisha is the largest producer of Bauxite in India.

3. Name the most abundantly available fossil fuel in India.

Answer:

Coal is the most abundantly available fossil fuel in India.

4. Which is the highest petroleum-producing area in India?

Answer:

Mumbai High is the highest petroleum-producing area in India.

5. Name the gulf that provides ideal conditions for utilising tidal energy in India.

Answer:

Gulf of Kambhat and Gulf of Kuchchh in Gujarat provide ideal conditions for utilising tidal energy in India.

6. Which rock consists of single mineral only?

Answer:

Limestone consists of single mineral.

7. How do minerals occur in sedimentary rocks?

Answer:

Minerals in sedimentary rocks occur in beds or layers. They are accumulated and concentrated in horizontal strata, for example coal.

8. What are the two types of minerals according to occurrence in igneous and metamorphic rocks?

Answer:

In igneous and metamorphic rocks, minerals may occur in cracks, cervices, faults or joints. The smaller occurrences are called veins while the larger are called lodes.

9. Why is there a wide range of colours, hardness, crystal forms, lustre and density found in minerals?

Answer:

A wide range of colours, hardness, crystal forms, lusture and density is found in minerals because a particular mineral is formed from a certain combination of elements and depends upon the physical and chemical conditions under which the material forms.

10. How do minerals occur in igneous and metamorphic rocks?

Answer:

In igneous and metamorphic rocks minerals occur in the cracks, cervices, faults or joints. The smaller occurrences are called veins and the larger ones are called lodes.

11. How do minerals occur in sedimentary rocks?**Answer:**

In sedimentary rocks, minerals occur in beds or layers. They are deposited in horizontal stratas.

12. Why should the use of cattle cake as fuel be discouraged?**Answer:**

The use of cattle cake as fuel should be discouraged because huge loss of trees will be there when we burn cattle cake and use it as source of fuel. It must be consumed in biogas plants for its effective usage.

13. How are gobar gas plants beneficial to the farmers?**Answer:**

Gobar gas plants are beneficial to the farmers because they provide energy and improved quality of manure.

14. Why does aluminum metal have great importance?**Answer:**

Aluminium metal has great importance because it combines the strength of metals such as iron, with extreme lightness and also with good conductivity and great malleability. It can be used as a substitute for steel.

15. How is iron ore transported from Kudremukh mines to a port near Mangalore?**Answer:**

From Kudremukh mines to a port near Mangalore, the iron ore is transported as slurry through a pipeline.

16. How does mining affect the health of miners?**Answer:**

Mining produces dust and noxious fumes, which are inhaled by the miners. It makes them vulnerable to pulmonary diseases.

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [3 MARKS]**17. Mention any three major iron-ore belts in India. Write any three characteristics of the southermost iron-ore belt.****Answer:**

The three major iron-ore belts in India are: (any three)

- Orissa-Jharkhand belt.
- Durg-Bastar-Chandrapur belt
- Ballari-Chitradurga-Chikkamagaluru-Tumakuru belt
- Maharashtra-Goa belt

The three characteristics of the southern-most belt, Ballari-Chitradurga- Chikkamagaluru-Tumakuru belt, are as follows.

- It has large reserves of iron ore.
- The Khudremukh mines, located in the Western Ghats of Karnataka, are a hundred per cent export unit.
- Khudremukh deposits are one of the largest mines in the world.

18. What is the use of manganese? Name the largest manganese-ore producing state in India.**OR**

Which state is the largest producer of manganese in India? Mention any four uses of manganese.

Answer:

Odisha is the largest producer of manganese in India.

Four uses of manganese are as follows:

- Manganese is used in manufacture of steel and ferro-manganese alloy.
- It is used in manufacturing bleaching powder.
- It is a raw material in manufacturing insecticides.
- It is also used in making paints.

19. Classify energy resources into two categories. Give two examples of each.

Answer:

Energy resources can be classified into the following categories.

- (a) Conventional sources—firewood, coal and petroleum
- (b) Non-conventional sources—Solar energy, wind power and tidal energy

20. How is solar energy becoming popular in rural and remote areas of India? Explain.

Answer:

Solar energy is becoming popular in rural and remote areas of India because of the following reasons:

- It has reduced the dependence of rural households on firewood and dung cakes.
- It has been able to reduce environment pollution to a great extent.
- Dung cakes used earlier are now utilised for increasing fertility of the soil.
- Being abundant in nature it is available all through the year.
- Moreover tapping of solar energy is not expensive and thus is preferred by all.
- It can be stored and used later.

21. ‘We have to adopt a cautious approach for the judicious use of our limited energy resources.’

Support the statement with three examples.

Answer:

We have to adopt a cautious approach for the judicious use of our limited energy resources because of the following reasons.

- They are non-renewable, once consumed we will not be able to get them back.
- Energy is required for all our activities—to cook, to provide light and heat, to drive vehicles and machinery, so, it should be used judiciously.
- Keeping in mind the needs of our future generation, we have to adopt the policy of sustainable development.

22. Why is energy required for all activities? How can energy be generated?

Answer:

Energy is required for all our activities. It is needed to cook, to provide heat and light, to propel vehicles, and to drive machinery.

Energy can be generated from conventional and non-conventional sources. Conventional resources include fire wood, cattle dung cake, fuel minerals like coal, petroleum etc. Non-conventional resources include solar, wind, tidal, atomic energy, etc.

23. What are the two main ways of generating electricity? How are they different from each other? Explain.

Answer:

Electricity is generated:

- by running water which drives hydro turbines to generate hydro electricity.
- by burning fuels such as coal, petroleum and natural gas to drive turbines to produce thermal power.

They are different from each other in the sense that hydroelectricity is generated by water, which is a renewable source, whereas thermal electricity is generated using non-renewable fossil fuels.

24. Name the non-metallic mineral which can split easily into thin sheets. Mention its uses.

Answer:

Mica can easily split into thin sheets. It has excellent di-electric strength, low- power loss factor, insulating properties and resistance to high voltage.

The following are the uses of mica.

- It is used in electronics and electric industries as insulators.
- It is used in paints.
- It is used in toothpaste and cosmetics to give them shiny appearance.

25. Which is the most abundantly available fossil fuel in India? Mention its different forms.

Answer:

The most abundantly available fossil fuel in India is coal. Coal is used as a domestic fuel for generation of thermal power and to supply energy to industries.

The following points show the importance of different types of coal.

- **Lignite:** It is a low-grade brown coal, which is soft and has a high moisture content. It is used for generation of electricity.
- **Bituminous:** The most popular variety of commercial and metallurgical coal is bituminous. It is formed due to high temperature deep in the interior. It has a special value in smelting of iron in blast furnaces.
- **Anthracite:** The highest quality of hard coal is known as Anthracite. It has the highest content of carbon and is mainly used for power generation in metallurgy.

26. Explain any three factors affecting the economic viability of a reserve of minerals.

Answer:

Factors affecting the economic viability of a reserve of mineral are:

- concentration of mineral in an ore.
- how easily can the mineral be extracted.
- closeness to the market.

27. Explain any three values which inspire us to conserve our energy resources.

Answer:

Three values which inspire us to conserve our energy resources are as follows:

- Consciousness towards environment and its protection is required. Excess and careless use of resources will degrade the environment. Use of renewable power resources will address global issues of pollution.
- We should adopt a responsible attitude towards the use of power resources as they are in limited quantity. Wise use of these resources can be the only remedy.
- We have to be accountable towards future generation. We should adopt sustainable development so as to preserve the resources for use by our generations to come.

28. Why is solar energy fast becoming popular in rural and remote areas of India? Explain.

Answer:

Solar energy is fast becoming popular in rural and remote areas of India because of the following reasons.

- It is one of the best forms of non-conventional sources of energy.
- It is not very expensive to install photovoltaic technology which converts solar light into solar energy.
- Tapping solar energy will reduce the dependence of dung cakes and will provide adequate manure for agriculture.

29. How is the mining activity injurious to the health of the miners and environment? Explain.**Answer:**

Mining activity is injurious to the health of miners due to the following reasons.

- Inhalation of poisonous gases and dust make them vulnerable to pulmonary diseases.
- The risk of collapse of mine roofs may risk the life of miners.
- Inundation and fires in coalmines are a constant threat to the miners.

The following points show how mining affects the environment.

- It results in contamination of water.
- Dumping of waste and slurry leads to degradation of land and soil.
- It results in air and water pollution.

30. In the present day energy crisis, what steps will you like to take for saving energy?**Answer:**

We can save the energy by the following ways.

- Switching off the electrical appliances when not in use
- Use of energy efficient devices like CFC bulbs and appliances
- Car pooling or use of public transport instead of private vehicles
- Use of alternate sources of energy (non-conventional/renewable sources)

31. How can solar energy solve the energy problem to some extent in India? Give your opinion.**Answer:**

Solar energy can solve the energy problem in India to some extent in the following ways:

- India is a tropical country and it has enormous possibilities of tapping solar energy.
- It is the cleanest form of energy available free of cost.
- It minimises dependence of rural households on firewood and dung cakes.

32. Describe any three features of ferrous minerals found in India.**Answer:**

Three features of ferrous minerals are as follows.

- Ferrous minerals account for about three-fourths of the total value of the production of metallic minerals.
- They provide the base for the development of metallurgical industries.
- India is rich in ferrous minerals and exports substantial quantities after meeting the local demands.

33. How can biogas solve the energy problem mainly in rural India? Give your suggestions.**Answer:**

Biogas is produced from shrubs, farm waste, animal and human waste mainly for domestic consumption in rural areas. It can solve the energy problem in rural India in the following ways.

- Decomposition of organic matter yields gas, which has higher thermal efficiency than kerosene, dung cake and charcoal.
- It provides the farmers with energy and improved quality of manure.
- It prevents the loss of trees and manure due to burning of fuel coal and cowdung cakes.

34. ‘Consumption of energy in all forms has been rising all over the country. There is an urgent need to develop a sustainable path of energy development and energy saving.’ Suggest and explain any three measures to solve this burning problem.**Answer:**

The following are the measures to solve this burning problem.

- We should use public transport instead of personal vehicles as much as possible.
- We should switch off electricity when not in use.
- We should switch to power-saving devices.

- We should keep our power equipment well maintained.
- Above all, use of non-conventional sources of energy would be of great help in overcoming the problem.

35. ‘There is a pressing need to use renewable energy resources.’ Justify the statement with suitable arguments.

OR

Why is there a pressing need to use non-conventional sources of energy in India? Explain any three reasons.

Answer:

The given statement can be justified by the following arguments.

- Increased consumption of energy resources has increased our dependence on fossil fuels like coal, oil and gas.
- There are uncertainties about the energy supplies in future because of their potential shortages.
- Use of non-renewable sources have serious consequences on the growth of national economy as they are getting expensive day by day.
- Above all, non-renewable sources pose a great threat in the form of pollution and other environmental issues.
- Solar, wind, tide, biomass and energy from waste material can thus, be proved advantageous in long run.

36. How is energy an indispensable requirement of our modern life? Explain with three examples.

Answer:

Energy is an indispensable requirement of our modern life. The following points explain the statement.

- Energy is needed for all activities like to provide heat and light, to drive machinery and to cook.
- Every sector of the national economy like agriculture, industry, transport, communication, etc. requires energy to operate.
- The developmental plans require energy to remain operational. With the time, consumption of energy has been on steady rise, which again makes it a necessary requirement for our day-to-day life.

37. Make a distinction between hydroelectricity and thermal electricity stating three points of distinction.

Answer:

Hydroelectricity and thermal electricity differ from each other in the following ways.

Hydro electricity	Thermal electricity
1. Hydro electricity is generated by the force of running water falling on turbines.	1. Thermal electricity is generated by coal or Petroleum.
2. It does not cause any atmospheric pollution.	2. It causes atmospheric pollution.
3. Hydroelectricity is an unlimited resource i.e water is perennial or inexhaustible.	3. It is a limited resource. Its sources are exhaustible or nonrenewable like coal and petroleum.
4. It is cheaper in the long run.	4. It is expensive in the long run.

38. Explain the use of petroleum as an energy resource and as an industrial raw material.

Answer:

Petroleum is a major source of energy next to the coal in India.

The use of petroleum as an energy resource:

- It provides fuel for lighting and heating.
- It also provides lubricants for machinery to reduce friction.

The use of petroleum as an industrial raw material:

- It provides raw material for petro-chemical industries and a large numbers of manufacturing industries.
- Petroleum refineries act as a nodal industry for synthetic textiles, fertilisers and chemical industries.

39. Explain any three steps to be taken to conserve the energy resources.

Answer:

Energy is needed for economic development.

- It is required for cooking.
- It is required to provide heat and light.
- It is used for running the machines in industries.
- It is used to propel the vehicles.
- It is essential for the development of agriculture, industry, transport for commercial and domestic purposes

40. ‘Solar energy is expected to play an important role in India.’ Give three arguments in support of the statement.

Answer:

Solar energy is expected to play an important role in India because of the following reasons:

- India being a tropical country gets sufficient amount of sunlight throughout the year.
- It has enormous possibilities of tapping solar energy and converting it directly into electricity.
- It can reduce the dependence on fossil fuels for energy consumption.
- Its set up is low cost and it can provide sufficient amount of energy for daily needs of people in India.

41. Explain any three methods of conservation of mineral resources in India.

Answer: Minerals conservation is essential because:

- Minerals are non-renewable or finite in nature.
- The rate of formation of minerals is very slow in comparison to the rate of consumption. The geological processes of mineral formation takes place over millions of years.
- They are valuable and short-lived possessions of a country. Continued extraction leads to increasing costs as they are taken from greater depths along with decrease in quality.

The following are the three methods of conserving minerals.

- Minerals have to be used in a planned and sustainable manner.
- Improved technologies should be evolved to make use of low grade ores at low costs.
- Recycling of metals, using scrap metals and other substitutes would help in the conservation of minerals.
- Using better mining methods will also help to reduce waste

42. Why is coal called the most important source of energy even today in India? Explain giving three reasons.

Answer:

Coal is called the most important source of energy even today in India because:

- India has abundant reserves of coal which meets a greater part of our energy requirements.
- It is used for generation of electricity in thermal power plants.
- It is used as energy resources both for domestic and industrial purposes.

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [5 MARKS]

43. Differentiate between metallic and non-metallic minerals with examples

Answer:

The difference between metallic and non-metallic minerals are:

Metallic Minerals	Non Metallic Minerals
• Metallic minerals contain metal in the raw form.	• Non metallic minerals do not contain metals.
• These minerals are malleable and ductile.	• These minerals are neither malleable nor ductile.
• These metals are generally associated with igneous and metamorphic rocks.	• These metals are generally associated with sedimentary rocks.
• They are usually hard and have a shine of their own.	• They are not usually hard and have no shine of their own.
• Examples: iron, copper, bauxite and tin.	• Examples: salt, coal, mica and clay.

44. Differentiate between ferrous and non-ferrous minerals with examples.

Answer:

The differentiate between ferrous and non-ferrous minerals are:

Ferrous minerals	Non-Ferrous minerals
• Metallic minerals containing iron are called ferrous minerals.	• Metallic minerals that contain metals other than iron are non-ferrous minerals.
• They account for about three-fourths of the total value of production of metallic minerals in India.	• India's reserves and production of non-ferrous minerals is not very satisfactory
• Iron ore, manganese, chromite, tungsten, nickel and cobalt are examples of ferrous minerals.	• Copper, lead, tin, bauxite, gold are examples of non-ferrous minerals as they do not contain iron.

45. Differentiate between conventional and non-conventional sources of energy with examples.

Answer: (any five)

Conventional Sources of Energy	Non-conventional Sources of Energy
• Conventional sources of energy have been in use since time immemorial	• Non-conventional sources have been put to use in the recent past.
• Most of them, especially the fossil fuels are limited and exhaustible.	• They are inexhaustible, renewable resources.
• They emit smoke and ash on burning and cause environmental pollution.	• They are environment friendly as they do not cause pollution.
• As the supply of fossil fuels are limited they are expensive.	• As they are flow resources, freely found in nature in abundance other than atomic energy, they are less expensive.
• Simple mining as well as modern technology are involved in their production.	• Advanced scientific technology is involved in production.
• Coal, mineral oil, natural gas, and hydel power are examples of conventional sources of energy.	• Solar energy, wind energy, tidal energy, geothermal energy, biogas and energy from urban waste

46. Why is there a pressing need for using renewable energy resources in India? Explain any five reasons.

Answer:

The given statement can be justified by the following arguments.

- Increased consumption of energy resources has increased our dependence on fossil fuels like coal, oil and gas.
- There are uncertainties about the energy supplies in future because of their potential shortages.
- Use of non-renewable sources have serious consequences on the growth of national economy as they are getting expensive day by day.
- Above all, non-renewable sources pose a great threat in the form of pollution and other environmental issues.
- Solar, wind, tide, biomass and energy from waste material can thus, be proved advantageous in long run.

47. ‘Minerals are unevenly distributed in India.’ Explain with three examples.

Answer:

Minerals are unevenly distributed in India. This can be explained by giving the following examples.

- Peninsular rocks contain most of the reserves of coal, metallic minerals, mica and other non-metallic minerals.
- Sedimentary rocks on the western and eastern sides of the peninsula in Gujarat and Assam have rich petroleum deposits.
- Rajasthan, together with the peninsular region, has reserves of non-ferrous minerals.

48. Why is conservation of mineral resources essential? Explain any three methods to conserve them.

OR

Explain the importance of conservation of minerals. Highlight any three measures to conserve them.

Answer:

Minerals conservation is essential because:

- Minerals are non-renewable or finite in nature.
- The rate of formation of minerals is very slow in comparison to the rate of consumption. The geological processes of mineral formation takes place over millions of years.
- They are valuable and short-lived possessions of a country. Continued extraction leads to increasing costs as they are taken from greater depths along with decrease in quality.

The following are the three methods of conserving minerals.

- Minerals have to be used in a planned and sustainable manner.
- Improved technologies should be evolved to make use of low grade ores at low costs.
- Recycling of metals, using scrap metals and other substitutes would help in the conservation of minerals.
- Using better mining methods will also help to reduce wastage.

49. How is energy a basic requirement for the economic development of the country? Explain with examples.

Answer:

Energy is a basic requirement for the economic development of a country in the following ways.

- Every sector of the national economy—agriculture, industry, transport, commercial and domestic—needs inputs of energy.
- The economic development plans implemented since independence require increasing amounts of energy to remain operational.

- Energy is used for all activities. To provide light and heat, to propel vehicles and drive machinery in industries.
- For example, coal provides a large percentage of energy for country's economic needs, supply energy to industries as well as for domestic use.
- Also, natural gas is an important clean energy resource found in association with petroleum. It is used as a source of energy as an industrial raw material in petro-chemical industry.

50. Why is energy needed? How can we conserve energy resources? Explain.

Answer:

- Energy is needed for economic development.
- It is required for cooking.
- It is required to provide heat and light.
- It is used for running the machines in industries.
- It is used to propel the vehicles.
- It is essential for the development of agriculture, industry, transport for commercial and domestic purposes

We can save the energy by the following ways.

- Switching off the electrical appliances when not in use
- Use of energy efficient devices like CFC bulbs and appliances
- Car pooling or use of public transport instead of private vehicles
- Use of alternate sources of energy (non-conventional/renewable sources)

51. Highlight the importance of petroleum. Explain the occurrence of petroleum in India.

Answer:

The importance of petroleum is as follows:

- It provides fuel for heating and lighting.
- It provides lubricants for machinery and raw materials for many manufacturing industries.
- Petroleum refineries act as a 'nodal industry' for synthetic textiles, fertiliser and chemical industries. (any two)

The occurrence of petroleum in India:

- Most of the petroleum in India is found in anticlines and fault traps in the rock formations of the tertiary age.
- In regions of folding, anticlines or domes, it occurs where oil is trapped in the crest of the upfold.
- The oil-bearing layer is porous limestone or sandstone through which oil may flow. The oil is prevented from sinking or rising by intervening non-porous layers.

52. 'Minerals are indispensable part of our lives.' Support the statement with examples.

Answer:

Minerals are indispensable part of our lives. The statement can be supported giving the following examples.

- Almost everything we use, from a tiny pin to a towering building or a big ship, all are made from minerals. The railways lines and the tarmac (paving) of the roads, our implements and machinery too are made of minerals.
- Cars, buses, trains, aeroplanes manufactured from minerals are run by power resources derived from the earth.
- Even the food we eat contains minerals. Although our minerals intake represents only about 0.3% of our total intake of nutrients, they are so potent and so important that without them we would not be able to utilise the other 99.7% of foodstuffs.

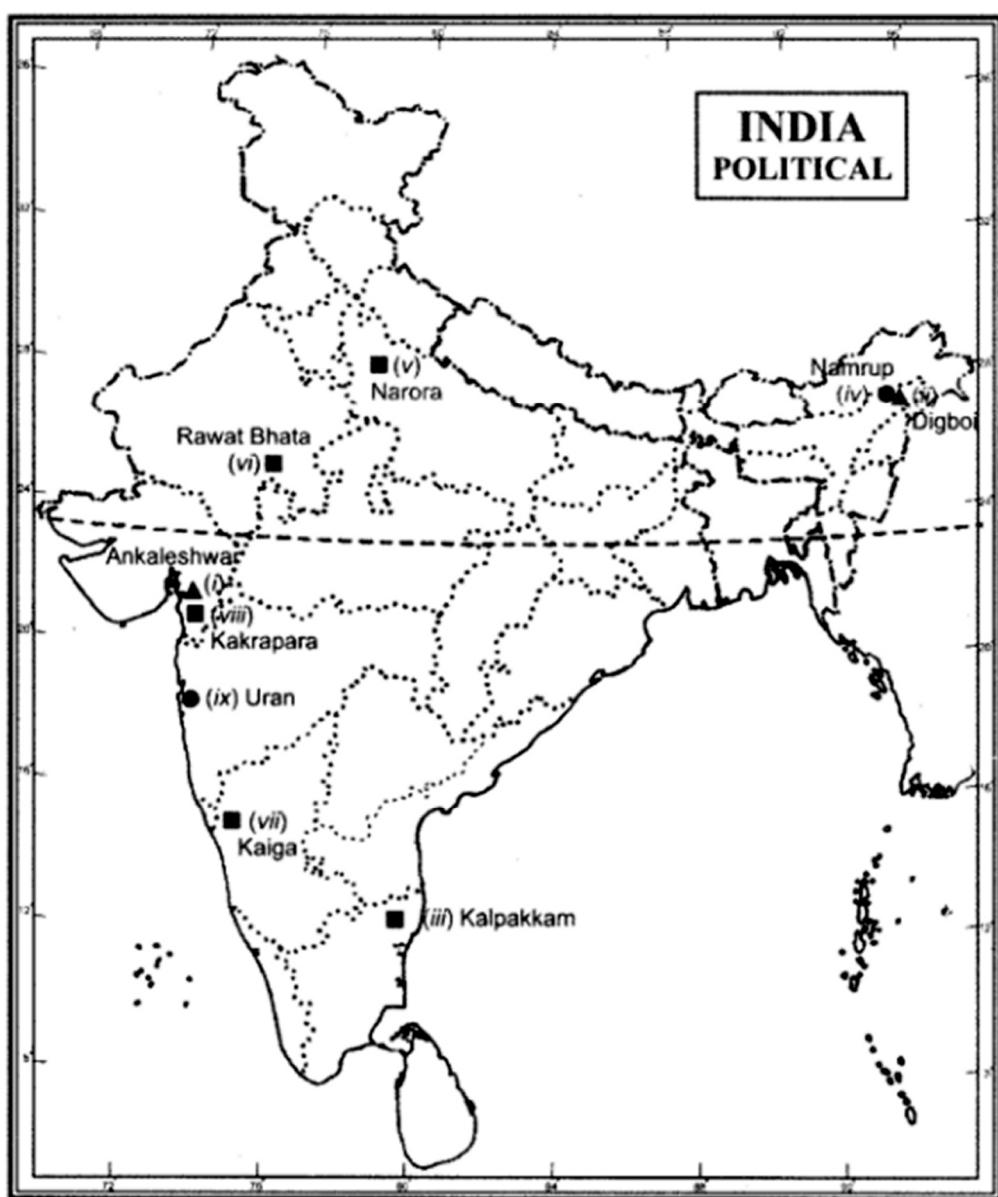
- Human beings have used minerals for their livelihood, decoration, festivities, religious and ceremonial sites. In short, all living things need minerals. Life processes cannot occur without minerals.
- Minerals like coal, petroleum, etc. are important sources of industrial and domestic energy. It is because of these energy resources that the wheel of development is moving.

IMPORTANT MAP QUESTIONS

- 1. On the given outline map of India locate and label the following with appropriate symbols.**

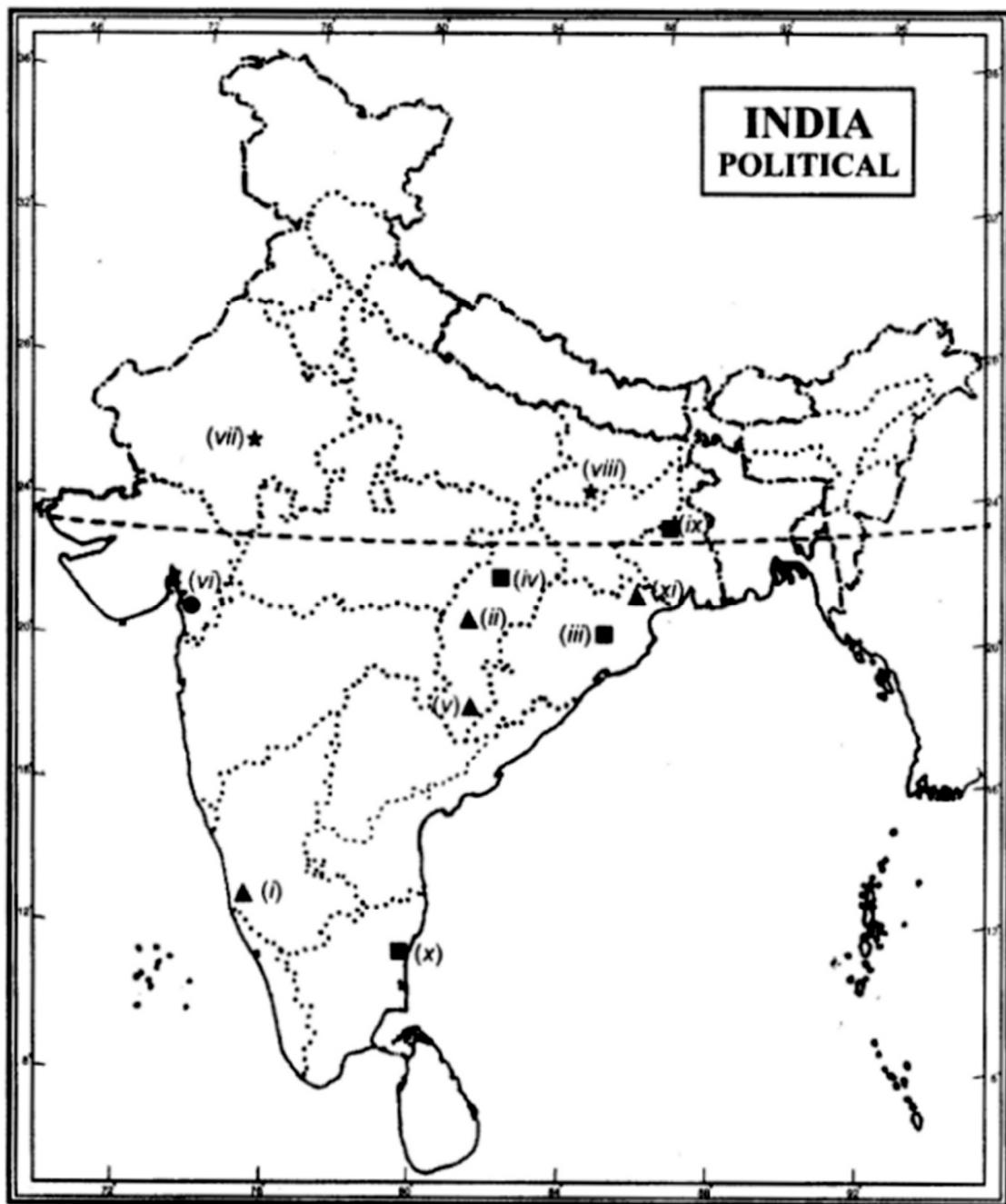
- (i) Ankaleshwar—Oil Fields
- (ii) Digboi—Oil Fields
- (iii) Kalpakkam—Nuclear power plant
- (iv) Namrup—Thermal power plant
- (v) Narora—Nuclear power plant
- (vi) Rawat Bhata—Nuclear power plant
- (vii) Kaiga nuclear plant
- (viii) Kakrapara—Nuclear power plant
- (ix) Uran—Thermal power station

Answer:

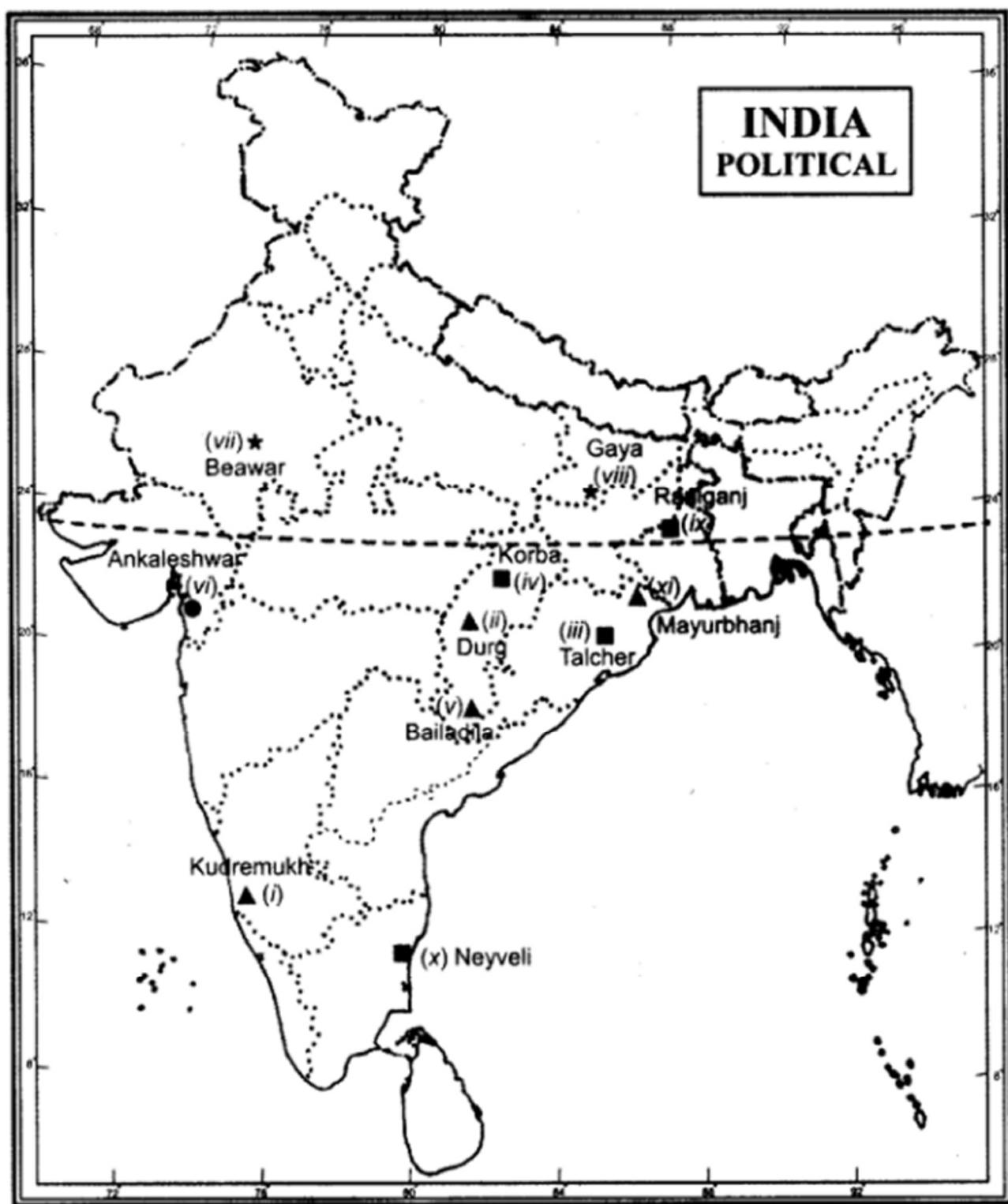


2. Some features are marked on the given political outline map of India. Identify them with the help of the following information and write their correct names on the lines marked in the map.

- (i) Iron ore mine
- (ii) Coal mine
- (iii) Coal mine
- (iv) Coal Mine
- (v) Iron ore or mine
- (vi) Oil Field
- (vii) Mica Mine
- (viii) Mica Mine
- (ix) Coal mine
- (x) Coal Mine
- (xi) Iron or Mine



Answer:



WATER RESOURCES

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [3 MARKS]

1. Which multipurpose project is built on River Satluj How this project has led to the development of the country?

Answer:

The multipurpose project built over River Satluj is Bhakra Nangal.

This project has led to the development of the country in the following ways.

- The area under irrigation is increased as ample amount of water is released from the dam.
- It has also been successful in harnessing electricity at a large scale.

2. "Water is a very important and critical resource in India." Support the statement by explaining any three points.

Answer:

Water is a very important and critical resource in India. The following points support this statement.

- Water resources are a significant part of the ecological cycle, which enable the existence of all living beings on the earth.
- Water resources help to carry out several agricultural and agriculture-related activities, thus playing a major role in the development of agricultural production.
- Water also contributes significantly to the development of industry as it supplies water to various water-based and power-based industries.

3. What is palar parti? What is its significance in the arid regions of Rajasthan?

Answer:

The rainwater which is stored in underground tanks is potable water. It is a reliable source of drinking water. It is called palar pani.

In the arid regions of Rajasthan, it is important in the following ways.

- It is the main source of drinking water, when all other sources have dried up.
- It is considered the purest form of drinking water.
- In summer, these tanks would keep the underground rooms, adjoining them, clean.

4. Analyse three major causes of water scarcity in India

Answer:

The following are the reasons for water scarcity in India.

- **Increased demand for water:** The growing population needs more water for domestic purposes and to produce more food. Agricultural purposes: For agricultural purposes, water resources are being over-exploited. More food needs to be grown for the increasing population. Intensive industrialisation and urbanisation: The increasing number of industries need more water and power to run the machinery. Hydroelectric power contributes twenty-two per cent of the electricity produced. The urban centres with large population and modern lifestyles have added to the problem of water scarcity. Over-exploitation of water resources: In some cities, housing societies have their own groundwater pumping devices to meet their needs. This has caused the depletion of water resources in several areas.
- **Bad quality of water:** The water is getting polluted by domestic and industrial wastes, chemical pesticides and fertilizers.

5. Describe any three different rainwater harvesting systems practised in India.

Answer:

The rainwater harvesting systems practised in India are as follows.

- In hills and mountainous regions, people built diversion channels like guls or kuls for agriculture.
 - Inundation canals were built in the floodplains of Bengal, to irrigate the fields.
 - In arid and semi-arid regions of Rajasthan, agricultural fields were converted into room-fed storage structures that allowed the water to stand and moisten the soil.
6. **What is a multipurpose river valley project? Give any four objectives of the multi-purpose river valley projects.**
- OR**
- Examine the importance of the river valley projects in the development of hydel power and irrigational facilities in India.**
- OR**
- Give any four objectives of the multipurpose river valley projects.**
- Answer:**
- Multipurpose river valley projects generally refer to large dams that serve several purposes in addition to impounding the water of a river. The water blocked is used for various purposes.
- The following are the four objectives of multi-purpose river valley projects.**
- Irrigation of water deficit areas
 - Electricity generation
 - Flood control
 - Water supply for domestic and industrial uses
 - Recreation
 - Inland navigation
 - Fish breeding
7. **Explain three traditional methods of rainwater harvesting in India.**
- Answer:**
- The rainwater harvesting systems practised India are as follows.**
- In hills and mountainous regions, people built diversion channels like guls or kuls for agriculture.
 - Inundation canals were built in the floodplains of Bengal, to irrigate the fields.
 - In arid and semi-arid regions of Rajasthan, agricultural fields were converted into room-fed storage structures that allowed the water to stand and moisten the soil.
8. **Why are different water harvesting systems considered a viable alternative in a country like India.**
- Answer:**
- Different water harvesting systems are considered a viable alternative in a country like India because of the following reasons.**
- In ancient India, along with sophisticated hydraulic structures, there existed an extraordinary tradition of rainwater harvesting system.
 - People had in-depth knowledge of rainfall regimes and soil types and developed a wide range of rainwater harvesting techniques to harvest groundwater, rainwater, river water and flood water in keeping with the local ecological conditions and their water needs.
 - For example, in the hilly and mountainous regions, people built diversion channels like guls or ‘kuls’ of western Himalayas for agriculture. Rooftop harvesting is practiced in Rajasthan to store drinking water. In West Bengal, people developed inundation channels to divert flood waters to irrigate their fields. In semi-arid and arid regions of Rajasthan, agricultural lands were converted into rain-fed storage structures that allowed the water to stand and moisten the soil like the khadins in Jaisalmer and Johads in other parts of Rajasthan.
9. **Why is the need for water increasing day by day? Explain three reasons.**
- Answer:**

The need for water is increasing day by day due to growing population, intensive industrialisation and urbanisation.

- A large population means more water is required not only for domestic use but also for increasing food production. To increase food production, water resources are over-exploited to increase the area under irrigation and dry season agriculture. Some of the rich farmers have their own wells in their farms for irrigation to increase food production. This in turn has resulted in lowering of groundwater levels, which affects water availability.
- Multinational companies are the heavy users of freshwater for power, which puts tremendous pressure on water resources. Moreover, multiplying urban centres with large and dense populations and urban lifestyles have not only added to water and energy needs but have further aggravated the problem.
- In cities or housing colonies, they have their own groundwater pumping devices to meet their water needs, resulting in over-exploitation and depletion of water resources in many cities.

10. Water resources are depleting fast in India and water is a necessity for life. Suggest three measures to conserve water.

Answer: Water is a resource of utmost importance and waterbodies should not be polluted. Given the present scenario, even the multi-purpose projects are under objection.

Three ways to conserve water are as follows.

- Rainwater Harvesting: Rainwater, groundwater and river water can be harvested and used for agriculture purposes and moisten the soil.
- Do not let the faucet run while brushing teeth, bathing or cleaning vegetables.
- Check for leaks in pipes, hoses, faucets and couplings.

11. Explain any two consequences of changing crop pattern due to irrigation.

Answer: The following are the two consequences of changing crop pattern due to irrigation.

- It has resulted in ecological problems like salinisation of the soil.
- It has also transformed the social landscape by increasing the gap between the rich landowners and landless poor.

12. Describe the procedure for rooftop rainwater harvesting.

Answer: Rooftop rainwater harvesting involves a number of steps as follows.

- Rooftop rainwater is collected using a PVC pipe.
- The collected water is filtered by using sand and bricks.
- Water is taken to the sump through underground pipes for immediate use.
- Excess water is taken from the sump to the well.
- Water in the well recharges the underground water.

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTION [5 MARKS]

13. Explain any three reasons due to which large dams have come under great opposition in recent years.

Answer: In recent times the dams have come under great opposition because of the following reasons.

- The construction of dams resulted in problems like excessive sedimentation, waterlogging, soil erosion, sudden floods, large-scale deforestation, extinction of species, displacement of communities and loss of livelihood of tribal communities. Dams also fragment rivers, making it difficult for aquatic fauna to migrate especially for spawning.
- Dams that were built to control floods have triggered floods due to sedimentation in the reservoir. Big dams have been unsuccessful in controlling floods at the time of excessive rainfall. The release of water from the dams during heavy rainfall, worsens the situation.
- Multi-purpose projects cause earthquakes, water-borne diseases and pollution due to the excessive use of water.

14. Why is rooftop rainwater harvesting important in Rajasthan? Explain.

Answer: Rooftop rainwater harvesting is important in Rajasthan because of the following reasons.

- The rainwater stored in tanks is an extremely reliable source of drinking water when all other sources are dried up.
- Rainwater is considered the purest form of natural water.
- Many houses have constructed underground rooms adjoining the tanks to beat the summer heat
- as it would keep the room clean.
- There is a lack of perennial rivers in Rajasthan.
- The rainfall is not reliable in this region.

15. “In recent years, the multipurpose projects and large dams have come under great scrutiny.” Give reasons.

OR

Mention any four disadvantages of multi purpose projects.

OR

How may the multipurpose river valley projects become harmful for the country? Explain with four examples.

OR

Why are multipurpose projects facing resistance? Explain with three reasons.

Ans. (i) Adverse effect on the fertility of the soil: Due to the construction of dams, there are no annual floods in the river. And

because of this, the soil of the downstream region does not get nutrient rich “silt”. This decreases the fertility of the soil.

(ii) Adverse impact on aquatic life: Due to the construction of dams on the rivers, the fish in the downstream area do not get sufficient nutrient material. Regulating and damming of rivers affect the natural flow of water causing poor sediment flow downward, and excessive sedimentation at the bottom of reservoir, resulting in rockier stream beds and poorer habitats for the rivers aquatic life. Dams also fragment rivers making it difficult for aquatic fauna to migrate for spawning i.e., to produce eggs.

(iii) Displacement of local communities : The building of large dams results in displacement of local communities. The local people often have to give up their land and livelihood and their meagre access and control over resources for the greater good of the nation.

(iv) Change in the cropping pattern : The multipurpose projects are responsible for providing assured means of irrigation to farmers. Due to this, most of the farmers have changed the cropping pattern shifting to water intensive and commercial crops. This has led to salinisation of soil leading to ecological imbalance.

16. How do the multipurpose river projects affect the aquatic life ? Explain.

OR

Explain the ecological problems being faced due to the multi-purpose river projects.

Ans. In recent years, the multi-purpose projects and large dams have come under great scrutiny and opposition for a variety of reasons :

(i) Regulating and damming of rivers affect their natural flow causing poor sediment flow and excessive sedimentation at the bottom of the reservoir, resulting in rockier streambeds and poorer habitats for the rivers, as well as the aquatic life.

(ii) Dams also fragment rivers making it difficult for the aquatic fauna to migrate, especially for spawning.

(iii) The reservoirs that are created on the flood. Plains also submerge the existing vegetation and soil leading to its decomposition over time.

(iv) Irrigation has also changed the cropping pattern of many regions with farmers shifting to

water intensive and commercial crops. This has great ecological consequences like salinisation of the soil.

17. Explain the quantitative and qualitative aspects of water scarcity.

OR

Water is available in abundance in India even then scarcity of water is experienced in major parts of the country. Explain with four examples.

Ans. (i) Quantitative aspect : This aspect is related to the availability of water resources. The availability of water resources varies over space and time mainly due to variations in seasonal and annual precipitation. However, water scarcity in most cases is caused by over-exploitation, excessive use and unequal access to water among different social groups.

(ii) Qualitative aspect : Now, let us consider another situation where water is sufficiently available to meet the needs of the people, but, the area still suffers from water scarcity. This scarcity may be due to bad quality of water. Lately, there has been a growing concern that even if there is ample water to meet the needs of the people, much of it may be polluted by domestic and industrial wastes, chemicals, pesticides and fertilizers used in agriculture, thus, making it hazardous for human use.

18. Why is there an urgent need to conserve and manage our water resources ? Mention three reasons.

OR

Why is it necessary to conserve water resources in India ? Explain.

OR

Why is it essential to conserve, and manage our water resources ? Explain any three reasons.

OR

Why we should conserve our water resources ? Explain any three reasons.

Ans. (i) Precondition for life : Water is necessary for life on earth. It is believed that life originated in water before it invaded land. Water is in fact a precondition of life.

(ii) Water essential for crops: Cultivation of crops depends on the availability of water. Water dissolves minerals and other nutrients in the ground. The roots of the plants draw this nutritious water for the soil. India is an agricultural country so availability of water is a must.

(iii) Water and industries : Industries need water as coolant, solvent, raw material, etc.

(iv) Water for daily life : Water is also used for drinking and domestic consumption. The growing urbanisation with its modern lifestyle has been demanding greater share of water day by day.

(v) Water an important component of ecosystem : Conservation of water is also important to prevent degradation of our natural ecosystems.

(vi) Water scarcity : It is essential to conserve and manage water because its overuse and misuse has lead to water scarcity.

19. How have the growing population, industrialisation and urbanisation led to water scarcity?

Explain.

OR

Explain any four reasons responsible for water scarcity in India.

OR

How have industrialisation and urbanisation aggravated water scarcity in India ?

OR

Give three reasons for water scarcity in post independent India.

OR

'Three-fourths of the earth's surface is covered with water but there is still scarcity of water across the globe.' Explain giving three reasons.

Answer:

The following are the reasons for water scarcity in India.

- **Increased demand for water:** The growing population needs more water for domestic purposes and to produce more food.
 - **Agricultural purposes:** For agricultural purposes, water resources are being over-exploited. More food needs to be grown for the increasing population.
 - **Intensive industrialisation and urbanisation:** The increasing number of industries ‘ need more water and power to run the machinery. Hydroelectric power contributes twenty-two per cent of the electricity produced. The urban centres with large population and modern lifestyles have added to the problem of water scarcity.
 - **Over-exploitation of water resources:** In some cities, housing societies have their own groundwater pumping devices to meet their needs. This has caused the depletion of water resources in several areas.
 - **Bad quality of water:** The water is getting polluted by domestic and industrial wastes, chemical pesticides and fertilizers.
-

LIFELINES OF NATIONAL ECONOMY

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTION [3 MARKS]

1. Explain the importance of railways as the principal mode of transportation for freight and passengers in India.

Answer:

Railways are the principal mode of transportation for freight and passengers in India in the following ways.

- Railways have contributed to the development of multifarious activities like business, sightseeing, pilgrimage and tourism along with the transportation of goods over long distance.
- It is an important means of transport for long distance travel with ease.
- It has binded the economic life of the country that has accelerated the development of agriculture and industry by carrying the raw materials to the industries and distribution of finished goods to the consuming markets.

2. Describe any three features of waterways in India.

Answer:

The three features of waterways are as follows.

- They are the cheapest means of transport for carrying heavy and bulky goods.
- They are fuel efficient.
- They are an eco-friendly mode of transport, however the slowest means of transport.

3. Describe the significance of tourism as a trade in India.

Answer:

Tourism means an activity of visiting places, especially in foreign countries for pleasure.

Tourism is known as a trade because of the following reasons.

- Foreign tourist's arrivals have increased over the years. 5.78 million foreign tourists visited India in 2010. It contributed Rs. 64,889 crores as foreign exchange in the year 2010.
- More than 15 million people are directly engaged in tourism industry.
- It helps in the development of Indian handicrafts and other economic activities.
- Foreign tourist visits India for business tourism, adventure tourism, medical tourism, eco tourism, heritage tourism, etc.

4. Mention the six mail channels introduced recently to facilitate quick delivery of mails.

Answer:

The following are the six mail channels.

- Rajdhani Channel
- Metro Channel
- Green Channel
- Business Channel
- Bulk Mail Channel
- Periodical Channel

5. Give reasons for which foreign tourists visit India.

Answer:

Foreign tourists visit India due to the following reasons.

- India has been an excellent place for heritage tourism. It is rich in culture and ethnicity.
- Many tourists come here for adventure in the mountainous regions of Himachal Pradesh, Uttrakhand, etc.
- Southern India provides excellent opportunities for medical tourism, which attracts tourists from the world.

6. Why is the distribution of roads not uniform in India? Explain with examples.

Answer:

The distribution of roads is not uniform in India because of the following reasons.

- India has vast and diverse relief features with high mountains and plateaus which restrict construction of roads in many areas.
- India is a land of rivers with dissected tributaries. It is not possible to lay roads in these areas where the rivers often create havoc during floods.
- Keeping in view the low volume of passengers and traffic, it is not economical to lay roads in such areas.

7. How does transport play an important role in the economic development of a country? Explain with examples.

Answer:

Efficient means of transport are pre-requisites for fast development because:

- the movement of goods and services from the supply location to demand locations necessitates the need for transport. It widens the market for goods.
- it allows distant and remote areas to be linked with urban and developed regions.
- the development and improvement of transport have made delivery of goods faster across long distances and thus reduced cost.
- immediate relief during war, natural calamity, famine or flood can be easily accessed through efficient means of transport.

8. How are the means of transport and communication complementary to each other? Explain with three examples.

Answer:

Means of transport and communication are complementary to each other in the following ways:

- Transport and communication provide basic infrastructure for each other to carry on their process.
- They create possibilities for investment to upgrade and expand their services.
- Communication has widened the horizons of trade far and wide.
- Transport had limited access earlier. With the advancement of science and technology the world has converted into a large village. Communication has widened the scope of transportation even in the remote areas.

9. ‘The distribution pattern of Indian railway network is influenced by the physiographic factors.’ Examine the statement.

Answer:

The distribution of railway network depends upon physiographic, economic and administrative factors. The following are the conditions responsible for uneven distribution pattern of the railway network in India.

- The northern plains have dense network of railways due to extensive level land, agriculturally and industrially productive region and support high density of population which is favourable for the development of railways. However, the presence of large number of rivers requires the construction of bridges across the rivers which poses some difficulties.
- In the hilly regions of the north and the peninsular plateau regions, railways are constructed through narrow gaps, or tunnels.
- The Himalayas region has less network of railways due to rugged terrain, sparse population and lack of economic opportunities.
- In the sandy plains of western Rajasthan, swampy regions of Gujarat, thickly forested regions of Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh and Jharkhand, construction of railways is difficult and expensive.

- Recently, the development of Konkan railway along the western coast has contributed to the movement of goods and passengers through the passes and gaps along the Western Ghats to link the most economic region of India.

10. Why is air travel preferred in the north-eastern states of India? Explain any three reasons.

Answer:

Air travel is more popular in the north-eastern states of India because of the following reasons.

- North eastern part of the country is marked with the presence of big rivers where other means of transport cannot be laid.
- It is marked with dissected relief that makes it impossible to access the area through other means of transport other than air.
- The entire area is covered with dense forest that resists land movement.
- This area is often hit by frequent floods. Air travel is thus required.
- It has a long international frontier that requires quick response which is possible only through air transport.

11. How can you help the Indian Railways to run the trains as per schedule? Explain.

Answer:

We can help the Indian Railways to run the trains as per schedule by:

- keeping the trains tracks clean, clear and well maintained.
- avoiding the pulling of chains for unnecessary reasons.
- avoiding the damage done to the railway property.

12. Describe any five major problems faced by road transport in India

Answer:

Major problems faced by road transport are:

- In terms of volume of traffic and passengers, the road network is inadequate.
- About half of the roads are unmetalled and get damaged during the rainy season.
- The number of National Highways is inadequate and are poorly maintained.
- The roads are congested in cities and are lacking safety measures.
- Most of the bridges and culverts are old and narrow.

13. Advancement of international trade of a country is an index of its economic prosperity.'

Justify the statement with five arguments

Answer:

Advancement of international trade of a country is an index of its economic prosperity. The following points can justify the statement.

- No country can survive without international trade because resources are space bound.
- Advancement of international trade of a country leads to its economic prosperity because such a trade provides so many jobs to workers as well as business to traders.
- It is through international trade that we earn much of our foreign exchange which is required for importing many essential goods.
- Foreign trade helps in transfer of technology.
- International trade gives rise to competition. Domestic producers make their production process efficient to meet the international standards and thus, are able to compete.

14. What are the means of communication? How do they create awareness among the masses and integrate the people? Explain with four examples.

Answer:

Communication refers to conveying of messages and ideas between individuals or to the masses. The means of mass communication are radio, television, media and films.

They create awareness among the mass and integrated the people in the following ways.

- Every day at regular intervals, we hear or watch the news on the radio and television. News are given on variety of subjects and topics and people come to know what is happening in the society, politics and economy.
- Newspaper also gives news on variety of subjects like politics, society, financial, sports and international. The news are given in details (of the day before). They also carry advertisements.
- India is the largest producer of feature films in the world. It produces short films, feature films and video short films.
- Means of communication also integrate the people. If we see about any unforeseen calamity on the television or read about it in the newspaper, the country stands united to help the victims.

15. How is road transport more advantageous than other means of transport for short distances? Explain with five suitable examples.

Answer:

- Road transport is economical in transportation of few people and smaller amount of goods. It reduces cost.
- Road transport do not need a station or a port (sea port and air port). It can cover short distances easily and quickly.
- There are a large variety of vehicles on the roads, carrying one, two or more than sixty persons. They can negotiate traffic jams.
- They provide door to door service.
- Road transport like rickshaws, bicycles, autos and scooters can negotiate the narrow and congested lanes and by-lanes and carry people and goods.

16. Explain the improvements made by the Indian railways in its functioning.

Answer:

Improvements made by Indian railways in its functioning are:

- Construction of new railway lines and extension of additional routes along certain routes.
- Electrification of railway network.
- Introduction of super fast trains like Shatabdi, Rajdhani, etc.
- Computerised reservation of booking and cancellation of tickets.

17. Explain three reasons for dense railway network in the North Indian plains.

Answer:

North Indian Plains have a dense network of railway because of the following reasons.

- Vast level land that is topographically suitable for laying railway lines.
- High population density makes it economical to operate.
- Rich agricultural resources in the plains require network of railways to sustain economy.

18. “Advancement of international trade of a country is an index to its economic prosperity.”

Support the statement with three arguments.

Answer:

Advancement of international trade of a country is an index of its economic prosperity. The following points can justify the statement.

- No country can survive without international trade because resources are space bound.
- Advancement of international trade of a country leads to its economic prosperity because such a trade provides so many jobs to workers as well as business to traders.
- It is through international trade that we earn much of our foreign exchange which is required for importing many essential goods.
- Foreign trade helps in transfer of technology.
- International trade gives rise to competition. Domestic producers make their production process efficient to meet the international standards and thus, are able to compete.

19. Mention any two inland waterways of India. Write three characteristics of each.

Answer:

The two inland waterways of India are:

- The Brahmaputra River between Sadiya and Dhubri.
- The West-Coast Canal in Kerala

The characteristics of Brahmaputra River between Sadiya and Dhubri are:

- The waterway is 891 km long on river Brahmaputra.
- Long cruise tourist vessels make voyages between Sivsagar near Dibrugarh and Manas wildlife sanctuary near Jogighopa continuously. Thus, making it a commercially beneficial proposition.
- Border security force deployed on this inland prove to be an important base for defence of the country.

The characteristics of West-Coast Canal in Kerala are:

- The stretch is 205 km long of the canals of Kerala. .
- The waterway provides 24 hours navigation facility in the entire stretch.
- The backwaters of Kerala prove to be cheap means of transport attracting tourists.

20. How has the distribution pattern of the Railway network in the country been largely influenced by physiographic and economic factors? Explain with examples

Answer:

The distribution of railway network depends upon physiographic, economic and administrative factors. The following are the conditions responsible for uneven distribution pattern of the railway network in India.

- The northern plains have dense network of railways due to extensive level land, agriculturally and industrially productive region and support high density of population which is favourable for the development of railways. However, the presence of large number of rivers requires the construction of bridges across the rivers which poses some difficulties.
- In the hilly regions of the north and the peninsular plateau regions, railways are constructed through narrow gaps, or tunnels.
- The Himalayas region has less network of railways due to rugged terrain, sparse population and lack of economic opportunities.
- In the sandy plains of western Rajasthan, swampy regions of Gujarat, thickly forested regions of Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh and Jharkhand, construction of railways is difficult and expensive.
- Recently, the development of Konkan railway along the western coast has contributed to the movement of goods and passengers through the passes and gaps along the Western Ghats to link the most economic region of India.

21. Write any four characteristics of Kandla sea port.

Answer:

The following are the characteristics of the Kandla sea port:

- It is a tidal port.
- It was the first port developed soon after the Independence of India in Kuchchh.
- It was developed to ease the volume of trade from Mumbai port after the loss of Karachi port to Pakistan after the Partition in 1947.
- It caters to the convenient handling of imports and exports of granary and industrial belt spreading from states like Jammu and Kashmir, Himachal Pradesh, Punjab, Haryana, Rajasthan and Gujarat.

22. Explain any four merits of pipeline transport in India.

Answer:

The following are the merits of pipeline transport in India:

- Solids (when converted into slurry), liquids and gases can be transported through pipelines.
- Initial cost of laying pipelines is high but subsequent running costs are minimal.
- Trans-shipment of losses and delays are ruled out.
- It is economical to transport petroleum, natural gas, fertilizers to interior places of the country.

23. What is the meaning of road density? Describe any three major problems faced by road transportation in India.

Answer:

Major problems faced by road transport are:

- In terms of volume of traffic and passengers, the road network is inadequate.
- About half of the roads are unmetalled and get damaged during the rainy season.
- The number of National Highways is inadequate and are poorly maintained.
- The roads are congested in cities and are lacking safety measures.
- Most of the bridges and culverts are old and narrow.

24. What is the importance of railway transport? Describe any three major problems faced by Indian Railways.

Answer:

The following are the major problems faced by the Indian Railways:

- Passengers travel without ticket.
- Thefts and damages of railways property.
- Unnecessary chain pulling by the passengers cause delays.

25. Describe any four features of Indian tourism as a trade.

Answer:

Following are the features of Indian tourism as a trade:

- Tourism in India has grown substantially over the last three decades with the bumper increase in foreign tourists.
- It provides employment and financial support to local handicrafts and cultural pursuits.
- India has become a popular destination for heritage, adventure, medical and business tourism.
- Indian tourism has achieved the status of maximum foreign exchange

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [5 MARKS]

26. How do means of transport and communication play an important role in the economic development of the country? Explain.

Answer:

Dense and efficient network of transport and communication is a pre-requisite for the development of local, national and global trade of today because of the following reasons.

- We use different material and services in our daily life. Some of these are available in our immediate surroundings while other requirements are met by bringing things from other places. Movement of these goods and services can be over three domains of earth.
- Today the world has converted into a large village with the help of efficient and fast-moving transport.
- Transport has been able to achieve this with the help of equally developed communication system.
- Therefore transport, communication and trade are complementary to each other.
- Today, India is well linked with rest of the world despite its vast size diversity, linguistic and socio-cultural plurality.

27. ‘Roadways still have an edge over railways in India.’ Support the statement with arguments.

Answer:

Roadways still have an edge over railways in India in the following ways.

- Roads are cheaper than railways and are easier to construct and maintain.
- Roads provide door-to-door service, therefore the cost of loading and unloading is much less.
- Road transport is used as a feeder to other means of transport, i.e. it is a link between railway stations, airports and seaports.
- Roads can traverse more dissected and undulating topography.
- It can negotiate higher gradients of slopes and can traverse mountains.
- Roads are economical in transporting few number of people and smaller amount of goods over short distances.

28. Classify communication services into two categories. Explain main features of each.**Answer:**

Communication services can be classified into two categories—personal communication and mass communication.

Main features of personal communication:

- It is the communication between person to person. In this communication, only personal messages are exchanged.
- Personal communication is done through mobile phones, letters, e-mails, post cards, etc.

Main features of mass communication:

- It is the communication among masses. It provides entertainment as well as awareness about various national programmes.
- Mass communication is done through radio, television, newspapers, magazines, books, films, etc.

29. Define the term tourism. Why is tourism known as a trade? Explain**Answer:**

Tourism means an activity of visiting places, especially in foreign countries for pleasure.

Tourism is known as a trade because of the following reasons.

- Foreign tourist's arrivals have increased over the years. 5.78 million foreign tourists visited India in 2010. It contributed ₹ 64,889 crores as foreign exchange in the year 2010.
- More than 15 million people are directly engaged in tourism industry.
- It helps in the development of Indian handicrafts and other economic activities.
- Foreign tourist visits India for business tourism, adventure tourism, medical tourism, eco tourism, heritage tourism, etc.

30. Explain any five major problems faced by road transport in India**Answer:**

The major problems faced by road transport in India are as follows.

- The road network is inadequate when volume of traffic and passengers are taken into consideration.
- Nearly half of the roads are unmetalled and it limits their usage during the rainy season.
- Roadways are highly congested in the cities, with frequent traffic jams.
- Most of the bridges and culverts are old and narrow.
- The national highways are inadequate too.

31. Why is a dense and efficient network of transport and communication a prerequisite for the development of local, national and global trade of today? Give your opinion.**Answer:**

Dense and efficient network of transport and communication is a pre-requisite for the development of local, national and global trade of today because of the following reasons.

- We use different material and services in our daily life. Some of these are available in our immediate surroundings while other requirements are met by bringing things from other places. Movement of these goods and services can be over three domains of earth.
- Today the world has converted into a large village with the help of efficient and fast-moving transport.
- Transport has been able to achieve this with the help of equally developed communication system.
- Therefore transport, communication and trade are complementary to each other.
- Today, India is well linked with rest of the world despite its vast size diversity, linguistic and socio-cultural plurality.

32. ‘Road transport and rail transport in India are not competitive but complementary to each other.’ Justify the statement.

Answer:

The statement road transport and rail transport in India are not competitive but complementary to each other can be justified in the following ways.

- Road transport is more suitable for short distances whereas rail transport is more suitable for long distances.
- Road transport is economical in transportation of few persons and relatively smaller amount of goods over short distances whereas rail transport is more suitable for large number of people and heavy goods.
- Road transport is beneficial for perishable goods to be carried by roads in short period of time whereas non-perishable and bulky are transported by railways for a longer distances.
- Road transport increases the efficiency of railways.
- Road transport links the rural areas with railway stations.
- The deficiency of railways is compensated by road transport.

33. ‘Advancement of international trade of a country is an index to its prosperity.’

Support the statement with suitable examples.

Answer:

Advancement of international trade of a country is an index of its economic prosperity. The following points can justify the statement.

- No country can survive without international trade because resources are space bound.
- Advancement of international trade of a country leads to its economic prosperity because such a trade provides so many jobs to workers as well as business to traders.
- It is through international trade that we earn much of our foreign exchange which is required for importing many essential goods.
Foreign trade helps in transfer of technology.
- International trade gives rise to competition. Domestic producers make their production process efficient to meet the international standards and thus, are able to compete.

34. ‘Indian railways binds the economic life of the country as well as accelerates the development of industry and agriculture.’ Justify the statement.

Answer:

They are principal mode of transportation for freight and passengers. They help in multifarious ways like business, sightseeing, along with transportation of goods over long distances.

- Economic development of a region depends upon the dense network of rail transport.
- They link areas of production with that of consumption, agriculture with industry and village with towns and cities.
- They help in industrial development by assemblage of raw materials and distribution of finished goods.
- They help in regional development.

- Railways help in the development of all the three sectors of the economy— primary, secondary and tertiary.

35. Mention any four merits and any two demerits of air transport

Answer:

Merits of air transport are:

- Most comfortable
- Fastest means of transport
- Covers long stretches of mountains, deserts, thick forests and oceanic stretches with great ease.
- Helicopters can land and take off from any place.

Demerits of air transport are:

- Very expensive
- It is often affected by weather phenomenon like fog and strong currents in upper atmosphere.

MAP QUESTIONS

➤ On the given map of India locate and label the following with appropriate symbols:

- (I) Tuticorin-Major seaport
- (ii) Kochi-Major seaport
- (iii) Kandla-Major seaport
- (iv) Raja Sansi International airport or Amritsar International Airport
- (v) New Mangalore-Major seaport
- (vi) Paradip-Seaport
- (vii) Vishakhapatnam-Major seaport
- (viii) Chennai/Madras

➤ Some features are marked on the given political map of India, with the help of following information and write their correct lines marked in the maps.

- (i) Terminal station of North-South Corridor
- (ii) Terminal station of East-West Corridor
- (ill) The terminal station of North-South Corridor
- (iv) Terminal station of East-West Corridor
- (v) Terminal station of NH7
- (vi) Terminal station of NH7
- (vii) International Airport
- (viii) Major seaport
- (ix) Terminal station of NH7
- (x) Terminal station of NH1

AGRICULTURE

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [3 MARKS]

1. Distinguish between primitive subsistence farming and intensive subsistence farming.

Answer:

The following are the differences between primitive subsistence farming and intensive subsistence farming.

Primitive subsistence farming	Intensive subsistence farming
1)It is practiced on a small patch of land.	1)It is practiced in areas of high population pressure on land.
2)It is done with the help of primitive tools like hoe, dao and digging sticks.	2)It is done with the help of fertilizers, insecticides, pesticides, HYV seeds, use of machines and other implements.
3)This type of farming is depended on monsoon.	3)It is entirely depended on machines.
4)When the soil fertility decreases the farmers shift and clear a fresh patch of land for cultivation.	4)The farmers continue to take maximum output from the limited land in the absence of alternative source of livelihood.
5)The production is only for home consumption.	5)The production is not only for farmer consumption. It is for other people also.

2. Define plantation agriculture. Explain any four characteristics of plantation agriculture.

Answer:

Plantation is a type of commercial farming where a single crop is grown on a large area. The following are the four characteristics of plantation.

- Plantations have very large areas.
- Capital-intensive inputs are used.
- Migrant labourers are used.
- All the produce is used as raw material in respective industries.
- The development of plantations is the result of a well-developed network of transport and communication, connecting plantations to markets

3. How has irrigation changed the cropping pattern in many regions of India. Explain with examples.

Answer:

Irrigation has changed the cropping pattern of many regions, with farmers shifting to water-intensive and commercial crops.

- Due to the success of the Green Revolution in Punjab, Haryana, western Uttar Pradesh and parts of Rajasthan, these states have started growing rabi crops like wheat, barley, peas and gram.
- Paddy has become an important crop of Punjab and Haryana. In states like Assam, West Bengal and Orissa, three crops of paddy are grown in a year. They are Aus, Aman and Boro.
- The development of canal irrigation and tubewells has made it possible to grow rice in areas of less rainfall such as Punjab, Haryana, Western Uttar Pradesh and parts of Rajasthan.
- The use of modern inputs like HYV (High Yielding Variety) seeds, fertilizers and irrigation has contributed to high production of maize.

4. “Wheat and rice farming in India are fairly different from each other.” Support the statement with five suitable examples.

Answer:

Wheat	Rice
(a) It is a rabi crop and a temperate crop.	(a) It is a kharif crop and a tropical crop.
(b) It requires about 10–15°C temperature and a rainfall of 60–75 cms.	(b) It requires more than 25°C temperature, high humidity with annual rainfall of above 100 cms.
(c) It requires well drained fertile soil.	(c) It requires fertile alluvial soil with a clayey layer above.
(d) Leading producers are Punjab, Haryana and Uttar Pradesh.	(d) Leading producers are West Bengal, Kerala and Punjab.
(e) It does not require much of labour.	(e) It requires cheap labour for transplantation.

5. Explain rubber cultivation in India under the following heads.

- (a) Importance
- (b) Geographical conditions
- (c) Any two rubber-producing states

Answer:

- **Importance:** Rubber is an important industrial raw material.
- **Geographical conditions:** It is an equitable crop, which is grown in tropical and subtropical areas. It requires moist and humid climate with temperature above 25°C and rainfall above 200 cm.
- **Two rubber-producing states:** It is mainly grown in Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Karnataka and Garo hills of Meghalaya

6. Explain rice cultivation in India under the following heads.

- (a) Temperature (b) Rainfall
- (c) Agricultural season (d) Major producing areas

Answer:

- **Temperature:** Rice requires a high temperature of above 25°C.
- **Rainfall:** It requires high humidity with an annual rainfall above 100 cm. In the areas of less rainfall, irrigation is essential.
- **Agricultural season:** It is a kharif crop, which is grown with the onset of monsoon and is harvested in September-October.
- **Major producing areas:** Rice is cultivated in the plains of north and northeastern India, coastal areas and the deltaic regions. Development of canal irrigation and tubewells have made it possible to grow rice in areas of low rainfall such as Punjab, Haryana, Western Uttar Pradesh and parts of Rajasthan.

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTION [5 MARKS]

7. Describe the conditions required for the cultivation of tea. Name two major tea-producing states of India.

Answer: Tea is an important beverage crop. The following are the conditions required for its cultivation.

- The tea plant grows in tropical and sub-tropical regions, which have deep, fertile and well-drained soil, rich in humus and organic matter.
- Tea bushes require warm and moist frost-free climate all through the year.
- Tea bushes require frequent showers throughout the year to ensure continuous growth of tender leaves. It needs abundant, cheap and skilled labour.

- Two major tea-producing states are Assam and West Bengal.
- 8. Name the two most important staple food crops in India. Mention the geographical conditions required for their growth.**
- Answer:** The two most important staple food crops in India are rice and wheat.
The geographical conditions required for the growth of rice are as follows.
- It requires high temperature—above 25°C.
 - It requires high humidity for its growth.
 - It requires annual rainfall above 100 cm.
- The geographical conditions required for the growth of wheat arenas follows.**
- It is a rabi crop and needs cool growing season.
 - It requires bright sunshine at the time of ripening.
 - It also requires 50 to 70 cm of annual rainfall, well distributed over the growing season.
- 9. Explain any five features of comprehensive land development programme initiated during 1980s and 1990s.**
- OR**
Describe any five technological and institutional reforms initiated to improve the standard of agriculture in India.
- OR**
Describe any four institutional reforms introduced by the government of India in the interest of the farmers.
- Answer.** Comprehensive land development programme included both institutional and technical reforms. Following reforms were introduced:
- (a) Provision for crop insurance against drought, flood, cyclone, fire and disease.
 - (b) Establishment of Grameen Banks, cooperative societies and banks for providing loan facilities to the farmers at lower rates of interest were some important steps in this direction.
 - (c) Kisan Credit Card (KCC) was introduced for easy availability of inputs.
 - (d) Personal Accident Insurance Scheme (PAIS) was introduced by the Government of India for the benefit of the farmers.
 - (e) Special weather bulletins and agricultural programmes for farmers were introduced on the radio and television.
 - (f) The government also announced minimum support price, remunerative and procurement prices for important crops to check the exploitation of farmers by speculators and middlemen.
- 10. What are the challenges faced by the farmers today?**
- Answer:** (a) Indian farmers are facing a big challenge from international competition and reduction in public investment in agricultural sector especially in irrigation, power infrastructure and other inputs.
- (b) Subsidy on fertilizers is decreased leading to higher cost of production.
 - (c) Reduction in import duties on agriculture products.
 - (d) Farmers are withdrawing their investment from agriculture, resulting in lack of alternative employment opportunities.
 - (e) Erratic nature of monsoons also affects agriculture production on a large scale.
- 11. Suggest any five measures to enhance the agricultural production in India**
- Answer:** Agricultural is an important economic activity in our country. I would like to suggest the following measures to enhance the agricultural production in India.
- Each district and block can be made self-sufficient in agricultural production if the government provides proper agricultural infrastructure, irrigation facilities, electricity, etc.
 - Loans can be provided at lower interest rates to cultivator.
 - The use of latest techniques can be encouraged.

- Instead of concentrating only on rice or wheat, the food crop with a better growth potential in that particular area must be encouraged.
- Attracting foreign investment in agriculture and also free trade in grains will not only increase agricultural production, but will also create massive employment and reduce poverty in rural areas.
- Farmers should diversify their cropping pattern from cereals to high-value crops.

12. Mention the geographical conditions required for the growth of cotton along with any four cotton-producing states.

Answer: Cotton is a kharif crop. India is believed to be the original home of the cotton plants.

The geographical conditions required for the growth of cotton are as follows.

- Cotton grows in the drier parts of the black cotton soil of the Deccan Plateau.
- Cotton needs high temperature, light rainfall, 210 forest-free days and bright sunshine for its growth.
- It requires 6 to 8 months to grow.
- Major cotton-producing states are Maharashtra, Gujarat, Madhya Pradesh and Karnataka

13. What is intensive subsistence farming? Write three features of intensive subsistence farming.

Answer:

Intensive subsistence farming is practiced in areas of high density of population, where pressure of population is high on agricultural land.

The following are the three features of this type of farming.

- It is labour-intensive farming.
- High doses of biochemical inputs and irrigation are used for obtaining higher , production.
- Farm size is small and uneconomical due to the division of land.
- Farmers take maximum output from the limited land.
- Farmers do not have any alternative source of livelihood. Thus, there is enormous pressure on agricultural land.

14. Explain any five steps taken by the central and state governments to improve Indian agriculture after independence.

Answer:

Various initiatives taken by the central and state governments to ensure the increase in agricultural production after independence are as follows.

- Collectivism, consolidation of holdings, cooperation and abolition of zamindari, etc. were given priority to bring about institutional reforms in the country after independence.
- Land reforms were the main focus of the First Five Year Plan.
- The Green Revolution based on the use of package technology and the White Revolution (Operation Flood) were some of the strategies initiated to improve Indian agriculture.
- Minimum Support Price Policy, provisions for crop insurance, subsidy on agricultural inputs and resources such as power and fertilisers, Grameen banks, Kisan Credit Card (KCC) and Personal Accident Insurance Scheme are some of the reforms brought by the government.
- Establishment of Indian Council of Agricultural Research (ICAR), agricultural universities, veterinary services and animal breeding centres, horticulture development and weather forecast etc. were given priority for improving Indian agriculture.

The term used for grouping of small land holdings with bigger ones is consolidation of land holdings.

15. Explain any five features of Indian agriculture.

Answer:

The following are the five features of Indian agriculture.

- Indian agriculture is mainly of intensive subsistence type.

- It is mainly practiced in areas of high population pressure on land.
- It is labour-intensive farming, where high doses of biochemical inputs and irrigation are used for obtaining high yields.
- Farmers continue to take maximum output from the limited land in the absence of alternate source of livelihood, which leads to enormous pressure on agricultural land.
- The right of inheritance has led to division of land among successive generations and rendered the size of land holding uneconomical.

16. How is Rice farming different from Wheat farming in respect of the following?

- (a) Sowing and harvesting time.
- (b) Rainfall / irrigation requirements.
- (c) Areal distribution.
- (d) Yield per hectare.

Answer :

Rice	Wheat
1. It is sown with the onset of the monsoon i.e. June-July. Rainfall should be 100 cm or irrigation is necessary.	1. It is sown with the withdrawal of the monsoon i.e. November. Rainfall should be 50-75 cm or irrigation is necessary.
2. Harvesting is done in the month of October-November.	2. Harvesting is done in the month of March-April.
3. It is grown in West Bengal, Andhra Pradesh, Tamil Nadu, Punjab, Haryana, Uttar Pradesh.	3. It is grown in Punjab, Haryana, Uttar Pradesh.
4. Yield per hectare is high.	4. Yield per hectare is low.

17. Explain any five characteristics of commercial farming in India.

Answer: The following are the five characteristics of commercial farming in India.

- The main characteristic of commercial farming is the use of high doses of modern inputs, like HYV seeds, chemical fertilisers, insecticides and pesticides, in order to obtain higher productivity.
- The degree of commercialisation of agriculture varies from one region to another, for example rice is a commercial crop in Punjab and Haryana but in Odisha it is a subsistence crop.
- Plantation is also a type of commercial farming where a single crop is grown on a large area.
- Plantations cover large areas using capital intensive inputs with the help of migrant labourers.
- In India tea, coffee, rubber, sugar cane and banana are important plantation crops.

18. Describe the various technological and institutional reforms, which led to Green and White revolutions in India?

Answer : Green Revolution.

- (i) Technical inputs resulted in the green revolution in sixties and seventies of the twentieth century.
- (ii) High yielding and early maturing variety of seeds have been used.
- (iii) Instead of bio-fertilizers, chemical fertilizers are used.
- (iv) Flooding of fields are replaced by drip irrigation and the use of sprinklers.

White Revolution.

- (i) The Dairy Development led to the white revolution or “Operation Flood”.
- (ii) The dairy co-operation in the rural areas helped in rural development.
- (iii) The National Milk Grid achieved Operation Flood.
- (iv) Cross breed from foreign and native cattle have been developed.

19. Write four geographical requirements each for the growth of tea and sugar cane.

Answer:

For geographical conditions required for the growth of tea.

The following are the geographical conditions required for the production of sugar cane.

- It is a tropical as well as sub-tropical crop.
- It needs hot and humid climate with temperature of 21°C to 27°C.
- It requires annual rainfall between 75 cm and 100 cm.
- It can grow on a variety of soil.

20. Describe any four institutional reforms introduced by the government of India in the interest of the farmers.

Answer:

The institutional reforms introduced by the government of India in the interest of farmers are as follows.

- Collectivisation and consolidation of land holdings and abolition of zamindari system.
- Provision for crop insurance against droughts, floods, cyclone, fire and diseases.
- Establishment of grameen banks and cooperative societies to give loans to the farmers at low rate of interest.
- Announcement of minimum support price, remunerative and procurement prices for important crops to check exploitation of farmers by speculators and middlemen.
- Introduction of schemes like Kisan Credit Card (KCC) and Personal Accident Insurance Scheme (PAIS) for the benefit of the farmers. (any four)

21. Why is the growth rate in agriculture decelerating? How did the Government of India make efforts to modernise agriculture? Explain.

Answer:

The growth rate in agriculture is decelerating due to the following reasons.

- Reduction in public investment in agriculture especially for irrigation, power, rural roads, etc.
- Subsidy on fertilisers has decreased leading to increase in the cost of production.
- Reduction in import of agricultural goods
- Lack of employment in agriculture
- Erratic nature of monsoon rainfall

To modernise agriculture the Government of India has taken concerted efforts like the following.

- Setting up of Indian Council of Agricultural Research.
- Setting up of agricultural universities, veterinary services and animal breeding centres.
- Horticulture development
- Research and development in the field of meteorology and weather forecast
- Improvement of rural infrastructure

MANUFACTURING INDUSTRIES

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [3 MARKS]

1. How are integrated steel plants different from mini steel plants?

Answer: Following are the points of distinction:

- (a) An integrated steel plant is larger than mini steel plant.
- (b) Mini steel plant uses steel scrap and sponge iron while integrated steel plant use basic raw materials, i.e. iron ore for making steel.
- (c) Mini steel plant produces mild and alloy steel while integrated steel plant produces only steel.

2. Why are we not able to perform to our full potential in the iron and steel industry? Explain any three reasons.

OR

Describe the three major problems faced by iron and steel industry in India.

OR

Explain any three problems faced by Iron and Steel Industry in India.

Answer: Though India is an important producer of iron and steel, we are not able to perform to our full potential because of the following reasons:

- High cost and limited availability of coking coal.
- Labour engaged in production has low productivity.
- Irregular supply of electricity add up to its problems of production.
- Technological development in iron and steel industries is less.
- Resource allocation for research and development in production of steel are comparatively very less.

3. Explain any three characteristics of the chemical industry of India.

Answer: The characteristics of chemical industries of India are as follows:

- Chemical industries in India are fast growing and diversifying.
- It contributes 3% of GDP approximately.
- It is 3rd largest in Asia and occupies the 12th place in the world in the terms of size.
- It contains both large scale and small scale manufacturing units.
- There has been a rapid growth in the manufacture of organic and inorganic chemicals.
- Inorganic chemical industry is more widespread while organic chemical industry is located near oil refineries or petro-chemical plants.

4. Explain three phases in which treatment of industrial effluents can be done.

Answer: Treatment of industrial effluents can be done in the following ways:

- Primary treatment by mechanical means like screening, grinding, flocculation and sedimentation.
- Secondary treatment by biological process.
- Tertiary treatment by biological, chemical and physical processes. Recycling of water is also included in the tertiary treatment.

5. Why was cotton textile industry concentrated in the cotton growing belt of Maharashtra and Gujarat in the early years? Explain any three reasons.

OR

State the reasons for the location of Cotton Textile Mills in Maharashtra and Gujarat.

Answer: The cotton textile industry was mainly concentrated in the cotton growing areas because of the following reasons:

- Abundant availability of raw cotton due to favourable climate and presence of black soil.

- Huge market for cotton textile in and around Mumbai.
 - Well-developed means of transport including the port facilities in Mumbai.
 - Cheap labour from the adjoining areas.
 - Mild and moist climate is favourable for spinning the cotton yarn.
6. **Why is there a tendency for the sugar mills to concentrate in the southern and western states of India? Explain any three reasons.**
- Answer:** In recent years, there is a tendency among the sugar mills to shift and concentrate in the southern and western states, especially in Maharashtra because of the following reasons:
- The sugarcane produced here has a higher sucrose content, thus yields greater quantity of sugar.
 - The cooler climate here ensures longer crusting season as it prevents drying of cane.
 - Sugar mills are best suited for the cooperatives that are more successful in these states.
7. **Why is iron and steel industry called the basic industry? Explain any three reasons.**
- Answer:** Iron and steel industry is called the basic industry because:
- All other industries – heavy medium and light, depend on it for their machinery.
 - Steel is needed to manufacture engineering goods, construction material, defence, medical, telephonic scientific equipments and a number of other consumer goods.
 - Production and consumption of steel is regarded as the index of country's development.
- Today with 32.8 million tons of steel production, India ranks 9th among the world under steel producers.
8. **Explain with examples how industries have given a boost to agriculture.**
- Answer:** The economic strength of the country depends upon the development of manufacturing industries. Manufacturing industries give major boost to agriculture in the following ways.
- Manufacturing industries not only help in modernising agriculture, but also reduces the dependence of people on agricultural income by providing jobs in secondary and tertiary sectors.
 - Agro industries boost agriculture by increasing its productivity. They depend on raw materials from agricultural sector.
 - The industries sell their products like irrigation pumps, fertilisers, insecticides, pesticides, machines and tools to the farmers. The manufacturing industries thus make production process efficient.
 - Industries boost agriculture by transporting the goods produced to various markets.
9. **How do industrial units pollute air in India? Explain any four points.**
- Answer:** Industries cause different types of pollution—land, air and water.
- Air pollution is caused by the release of undesirable gases and smoke like sulphur dioxide, carbon monoxide.
 - Air-borne particulate materials like dust, sprays, mist and smoke cause air pollution.
 - Smoke is emitted from chemical and paper mills, brick kilns, refineries, smelting plants.
 - Burning of fossil fuels in big and small factories which do not follow pollution norms. Toxic gas leaks can be very hazardous with long-term effects.
 - Air pollution adversely affects human health, plants and animals. In human beings, air pollution can cause respiratory problems. Smog in the atmosphere cause respiratory problems.
10. **How is land degraded by industries? Explain any two methods to control land degradation caused by industries.**
- Answer:** Industries degrade the land in the following ways:
- Wastes like glass, harmful chemicals, industrial effluents, packaging, salts and garbage makes the soil useless.

- Mineral processing like grinding limestone for cement industry generates huge amount of dust that settles down on land. It makes land unfit for cultivation.
 - Large scale deforestation for setting up production units turns land as wasteland.
 - Construction of roads, housing complexes also degrades land.
- The following are the methods that can control land degradation caused by industries.**
- Control on mining and quarrying activities.
 - Proper discharge of industrial waste and effluents.

11. How does textile industry occupy a unique position in Indian economy? Explain giving any three points.

Answer: Textile industry occupies a unique position in the Indian economy because:

- It contributes 14% of industrial production.
- It has generated employment to 35 million people directly which is the second largest next to agriculture.
- It has contributed to 24.6% of foreign exchange earnings.
- It contributes to 4% of GDP.
- It is the only industry in India which is self-reliant and complete in the value chain i.e., from raw material to the highest value added products.

12. The sugar mills are shifting towards southern and western states of India.” Support the statement giving three reasons.

Answer: In recent years, there is a tendency among the sugar mills to shift and concentrate in the southern and **western states, especially in Maharashtra because of the following reasons:**

- The sugarcane produced here has a higher sucrose content, thus yields greater quantity of sugar.
- The cooler climate here ensures longer crusting season as it prevents drying of cane.
- Sugar mills are best suited for the cooperatives that are more successful in these states.

13. Explain any three objectives of the ‘National Jute Policy 2005’.

Answer: In 2005, the National Jute Policy was adopted with the aim of:

- Increasing productivity
- Growing better quality of jute
- Higher yield per hectare and better price for jute goods

14. Why is India not able to perform to her full potential in iron and steel production? Explain any three reasons.

Answer: Though India is an important producer of iron and steel, we are not able to perform to our full potential because of the following reasons:

- High cost and limited availability of coking coal.
- Labour engaged in production has low productivity.
- Irregular supply of electricity add up to its problems of production.
- Technological development in iron and steel industries is less.
- Resource allocation for research and development in production of steel are comparatively very less.

15. Classify industries into two categories on the basis of source of raw material used. Mention two features of each category.

Answer: On the basis of sources of raw material used, industries are classified into:

- **Agro based industries:** These are dependent on raw material produced in the agricultural sector. These industries are labour intensive.
- **Mineral based:** These industries produce goods which are used in other industries. These industries are capital intensive.

16. Classify industries on the basis of capital investment into two categories. Mention two features of each category.

Answer: On the basis of the capital investment industries are classified into:

- **Small-scale industry:** The maximum investment allowed is ? 1 crore. They produce light consumer goods like fans.
- **Large-scale industry:** If investment is more than one crore on any industry then it is known as large scale industry. They produce durable goods.

17. Classify industries on the basis of bulk and weight of raw material and finished goods into two categories. Mention any two features of each category

Answer: On the basis of bulk and weight of raw materials and finished goods, industries can be classified into:

- Heavy industry such as iron and steel.
- Light industries that use light raw-materials and produce light goods such as electrical industries.

The two features of heavy industries are:

- They produce those goods which are used by other industries.
- They satisfy our wants indirectly.

The two features of light industries are:

- They produce consumer goods like electrical bulbs, sewing machines etc.
- They produce goods which satisfy our wants indirectly, e.g. fuse wires.

18. ‘Environmental degradation has been everywhere.’ Explain any three values that can help to prevent environmental degradation.

Answer: Following values can be adopted to prevent environmental degradation.

- **Proper water management:** Stress on recycling and reuse of water and proper treatment of discharged water.
- **Control air pollution:** Spread awareness to install electrostatic precipitators, fabric filters in factories. Encourage use of oil and gas instead of coal.
- **Educate people for proper management of solid waste.** Separate biodegradable and non-biodegradable waste and dispose accordingly. Non-biodegradable waste can be recycled and reused.

19. Classify industries on the basis of capital investment. How are they different from one another? Explain with examples.

Answer: On the basis of capital investment, the industries are classified into small scale industry and large scale industry.

- The maximum investment in small scale industry is upto Rs. 1 crore, e.g., toy industry.
- If the investment is more than one crore rupees, then it is known as large scale industry, e.g., iron and steel industry.

20. “The textile industry is the only industry in the country which is self-reliant and complete in the value chain”. Justify the statement.

OR

“Textile industry occupies a unique position in Indian economy.” Support the statement with appropriate arguments.

Answer: The textile industry is the only industry in the country which is self-reliant and complete in the value chain i.e. from raw materials to the highest value added products.

The statement can be justified as follows:

- Textile industry is dependent on agriculture and provides jobs to farmers, cotton boll pluckers and workers engaged in ginning, spinning, weaving, dyeing, packaging, tailoring and sewing. The industry by creating demand support industries like dyeing.

- It contributes significantly to industrial production. India has world-class production in spinning and capable of using all the fibers that are produced.
- Textile industry has been a major foreign exchange earner with increase in foreign trade across the world.
- It contributes significantly to the National GDP.

21. Classify industries on the basis of source of raw material. How are they different from each other?

Answer: On the basis of the sources of raw materials used industries are classified into agro-based industries eg cotton, silk, rubber, tea etc. and mineral based industries, e.g., iron and steel, cement etc.

They are different from each other in the following ways:

- Agro based industries are based on agricultural raw materials, e.g. cotton, wool, sugarcane etc.
- Mineral based industries use minerals and metals as raw materials e.g. iron ore, bauxite etc.
- Agro based industries depend on manufacturing industries for machinery, tools and implements. On the other hand, mineral based industries feed manufacturing industries

22. Suggest any three steps to minimise the environmental degradation caused by the industrial development in India.

Answer: Environmental degradation can be minimised by

- Proper fuel selection and utilisation, e.g., CNG should be used in automobiles instead of diesel or petrol.
- Equipments to control aerosol emissions like inertial separators, filters, precipitators and scrubbers should be used.
- Smoke can be prevented by the use of oil instead of coal in industries.

23. India is an important iron and steel producing country in the world. Yet we are not able to perform to our full potential". Suggest and explain any three measures to get full potential.

Answer: The following measures can enable us to perform to our full potential:

- Liberalization and Foreign Direct Investment can encourage our entrepreneurs to boost production.
- Resources need to be allocated for research and development to add up steel production.
- Apart from this regular supply of coking coal and electricity has to be dealt with.
- Productivity of labour needs to be increased through proper training.
- Efficient system of roadways and railways has to be maintained for quick delivery of raw material and finished goods.
- Moreover domestic demand of iron and steel has to be increased

24. Classify industries on the basis of their main role. How are they different from each other?

Answer: According to their main role the industries are classified as:

- Basic or key industries. These industries supply their raw materials to manufacture other goods, e.g., iron and steel, copper smelting etc.
- Consumer industries. These industries produce goods for direct consumption by consumers, e.g., sugar, fans paper, toothpaste, etc.

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [5 MARKS]

25. "The economic strength of the country is measured by the development of manufacturing industries". Support the statement with arguments.

Answer: The economic strength of a country is measured by the development of manufacturing industries.

- Industries create a variety of goods and thus reduce the dependence of people on agriculture and contributes to modernisation of agriculture.

- Industrial development helps to reduce unemployment and poverty levels by initiating income and high standard of living.
- Export of manufactured goods add value to the economy. It expands trade and commerce and brings to foreign exchange.
- Industries utilise primary materials and convert them into articles of utility, thus adding value to the raw materials.
- Countries that transform their raw material into a wide variety of furnished goods of higher value are prosperous. India's prosperity lies in diversifying its manufacturing industries

26. Why are sugar mills concentrated in sugarcane producing areas? Explain any three problems faced by sugar industry in India.

Answer: The sugar industries are concentrated in the sugar producing areas because the raw materials (sugarcane) used by this industry is bulky. To reduce the cost of transporting sugarcane to sugar industries, they are concentrated in sugarcane producing areas.

The three problems faced by the sugar industry in India are:

- Old and inefficient methods of production
- Delay in transporting sugarcane to the factories
- The need to make maximum use of bags.
- Above all seasonal nature of the industry is also a major issue

27. Explain any five factors affecting the location of an industry.

OR

Describe any three factors that control industrial location.

Answer: The following factors affect the location of an industry:

- **Availability of raw materials:** Close proximity to raw material, regular supply at cheap cost are of utmost significance, e.g., concentration of heavy industries in Chattisgarh.
- **Labour:** Modern industry requires both skilled and unskilled labour at low cost. It also determines the location of industry, e.g., cotton textile industry in Maharashtra.
- **Capital:** Industries are capital intensive. Banks and other financial institutions, insurance etc. play an important role in setting up production units.
- **Power:** All production units depend on one or other sources of power like coal, oil, gas etc. Regular and cheap supply of power is required to keep industries operational, e.g., iron and steel industries near Raniganj and Jharia coal fields.
- **Market:** Goods manufactured need to be sold in the market to maintain the demand and supply.

28. Why was the cotton textile industry concentrated in the cotton growing belt in the early years? Explain.

Answer: The cotton textile industry was mainly concentrated in the cotton growing areas because of the following reasons:

- Abundant availability of raw cotton due to favourable climate and presence of black soil.
- Huge market for cotton textile in and around Mumbai.
- Well-developed means of transport including the port facilities in Mumbai.
- Cheap labour from the adjoining areas.
- Mild and moist climate is favourable for spinning the cotton yarn.

29. Describe three major problems faced by the weaving and processing sectors in cotton textile industry.

OR

Describe any three major problems faced by cotton textile industry in India.

Answer: The three major problems faced by the weaving and processing sectors in cotton textile industry are:

- Most of the production is carried out in fragmented small units.
- Power supply is erratic in nature.
- Machinery used by the weavers is outdated.
- The labour has low productivity.
- Textile industry faces stiff competition from synthetic fibre industry.
- Much of the high quality yarn is not used by our weavers as it is exported.

30. Explain the pro-active approach adopted by the National Thermal Power Corporation (NTPC) for preserving the natural environment and resources

OR

What steps have been taken by NTPC towards environmental protection?

Answer: NTPC has a pro-active approach for preserving the natural environment and resources like water, oil and gas in places where it is setting up power plants. The approaches are as follows:

- Optimum utilisation of equipment by adopting latest techniques and upgradation of existing equipment.
- Minimising waste generation by maximising the utilisation.
- Providing green belts for nurturing ecological balance.
- Reducing environmental pollution through ash pond management, ash water recycling system and liquid waste management.
- Ecological monitoring, reviews and on-line database management for all its power stations.

31. What is manufacturing sector? Describe the four types of manufacturing sectors on the basis of ownership.

Answer: Manufacturing sector refers to the secondary sector of the economy deals with production of goods in large quantities with the help of machine, which converts the raw materials into valuable products. On the basis of ownership, manufacturing is classified into four types:

- Public sector: Public sector industries are owned and run by government agencies like BHEL, SAIL etc.
- Private sector: Private sector industries are owned and run by individuals or a group of individuals. Example: TISCO, Bajaj Auto Ltd.
- Joint sector: Joint sector industries are jointly run by the state and individuals or a group of individuals. Example: OIL (Oil India Limited) is jointly owned by private and public sector.
- Cooperative sector: Cooperative sector industries are owned and run by the producers or suppliers of raw materials, workers or both or cooperative societies who pool their resources. They share the profit or loss proportionately, for example, sugar mills, coir industry and handloom textiles.

32. Why are most of the jute mills located on the banks of the River Hugli? Explain

OR

Explain any three factors responsible for the concentration of jute industry in Hugli basin.

OR

Describe any five factors responsible for the concentration of jute mills along the banks of the Hugli river.

Answer: The five factors responsible for the location of jute mills along the Hugli basin are:

- Proximity or nearness to the jute producing areas.
- Inexpensive water transport.
- Good network of roadways, railways and waterways which helps in the movement of raw material to the mills.
- Availability of abundant water for processing of raw jute.
- Cheap labour from West Bengal, Bihar, Odisha and Uttar Pradesh.

- Kolkata being a large urban centre provides banking, insurance and port facilities for export of jute goods.

33. Describe any five factors responsible for the concentration of iron and steel industry in and around Chotanagpur Plateau region.

OR

Why has the ‘Chotanagpur Plateau Region’ the maximum concentration of iron and steel industries? Analyse the reasons

Answer: Chotanagpur region is the hub of many iron and steel plants because:

- Iron and steel industry requires iron ore, coal, limestone and manganese which are available in close proximity.
- Good network of roads and railway facilitates the movement of raw materials to iron and steel plants.
- Rivers provide the cheapest means of inland water transport for iron and steel goods.
- Nearness to the city of Kolkata provides huge market, banking, insurance and financial services for iron and steel plants.
- Availability of cheap labour from Bihar, West Bengal, Jharkhand and Chhattisgarh. Hence due to these locational advantages iron and steel plants like Jamshedpur, Durgapur, Burnpur, Bokaro and Rourkela are confined to the Chotanagpur region

34. ‘Production and consumption of steel is often regarded as the index of a country’s development’. Examine the statement.

Answer: Production and consumption of steel is regarded as the index of a country’s development because of the following reasons:

- The production and consumption of iron and steel reflects the level of industrialisation and economic development of a country.
- All the other industries depend on it for their machinery. It provides raw material for making industrial machinery, electrical machinery, defence equipments, bridges, dams, shops, houses, etc.
- Vehicles carrying goods from one place to another are also made up of steel. It is because of these vehicles that our goods are transported from one place to another.
- Steel is required to manufacture a variety of consumer goods, like bicycles, fans, furniture, tractors, etc.
- It is the basic unit of economy. All buildings and infrastructures are constructed using iron and steel.

35. Explain any five measures to control industrial pollution in India.

Answer: Industries are responsible for four kinds of pollution-air, water, land and noise pollution. Industrial pollution can be controlled by:

- Industries should be set up in distant areas away from human settlements.
- Minimise the use of water processing through reusing and recycling.
- Treating hot water and effluents before releasing them in rivers and ponds.
- Particulate matter in the air can be reduced by fitting smoke stacks to factories with electrostatic precipitators. Smoke can be reduced in factories by using gas or oil instead of coal.
- Machinery can be redesigned to increase energy efficiency and reduce noise.

36. How do industries pollute environment? Explain with five examples.

Answer: Industries pollute the environment in many ways. They cause pollution in four ways-air, water, land and noise.

- Water pollution is caused by the discharge of industrial effluents into the water bodies without treating it.

- Dumping of wastes, harmful chemicals and industrial effluents e.g. packaging, and garbage makes soil useless. It also results in contamination of groundwater through seepage of rainwater.
- Air pollution is caused by release of undesirable gases and smoke like sulphur dioxide, carbon monoxide, air-borne particulate materials like dust, sprays, mist and smoke. Smoke is emitted from paper mills, burning of fossil fuels, smelting plants etc.
- Factory equipments, generators, saws cause noise pollution.
- Thermal pollution of water occurs when hot water from factories and thermal plants is drained into rivers and ponds before cooling.

37. “Manufacturing industry is considered the backbone of economic development of India.” Give three reasons.

OR

Examine the contribution of manufacturing industry to national economy.

Answer: Manufacturing sector refers to the secondary sector of the economy which deals with production of goods in large quantities with the help of machines, where raw materials are transformed into more valuable products. Manufacturing is considered as the backbone of economic development because:

- Manufacturing has contributed to modernisation of agriculture and reduced the dependency on agriculture by providing jobs in secondary and tertiary sectors.
- It has helped in reducing the poverty and unemployment and aimed at reducing the regional disparities by setting up of industries in rural, backward and tribal areas.
- Export of industrial goods contributed to valuable foreign exchange earnings.
- It has added value to raw materials by converting them into finished goods.
- The prosperity of a nation depends upon the development and diversification of manufacturing. Thus, it has not only made India self-sufficient but more competitive in terms of international market.
- It brings down regional disparities by establishing industries in tribal and backward areas.
- Industry sector contributes substantially to GDP.

38. “Agriculture and industry are complementary to each other.” Support the statement giving three points.

Answer: Agriculture and manufacturing industries have a close relationship. Each of them complement each other in the following ways:

- Each of them serves as market for goods produced by the other and in the process raises demand for each other's goods. For example, the agro-based industries, like textiles, sugar, etc., depend upon agriculture for raw materials.
- These industries have given a major boost to agriculture by raising their demand and hence, productivity. Manufacturing industries sell the products such as irrigation pumps, fertilisers, insecticides, pesticides, plastic and PVC pipes, agricultural machineries and tools, etc., to the farmers.
- Agriculture serves as their market and effects their development. These inputs from industries assist agriculturists in increasing productivity as well as have made the production processes very efficient.
- Manufacturing industries not only help in modernizing agriculture, they also reduce the dependency of people on agricultural sector, by providing them jobs in secondary and tertiary sector.
- Agro-based industries in India have given boost to agriculture by raising its productivity.

39. What is the main reason of water pollution? How can the industrial pollution of fresh water be reduced? Suggest three ways.

OR

How do industries cause water pollution in India? Explain any four points.

Answer:

- Water pollution is caused by the discharge of industrial effluents into the water bodies.(b)
Thermal
- pollution occurs when hot water from factories and thermal power plant is drained into rivers and ponds, before cooling. Aquatic life is effected by it.
- Rainwater percolates into the soil carrying pollutants to the ground and leading to contamination of ground water.
- The major industries causing water pollution are paper pulp, textile, chemical, tanneries, petroleum, refineries and electroplating industries give out dyes, detergent, acids, salts, heavy metals like lead, synthetic chemicals, plastics and rubber. Fly ash phospo-gypsum and iron and steel slags are the solid wastes discharged into the water.

Measures to control water pollution are:

- Minimising the use of water by reusing or recycling it in two or more stages.
- Harvesting of rainwater to meet water needs.
- Treatment of industrial effluents and hot water before releasing them in rivers and ponds.
- Overdrawing of ground water reserves by industries should be minimised.

MAP QUESTIONS

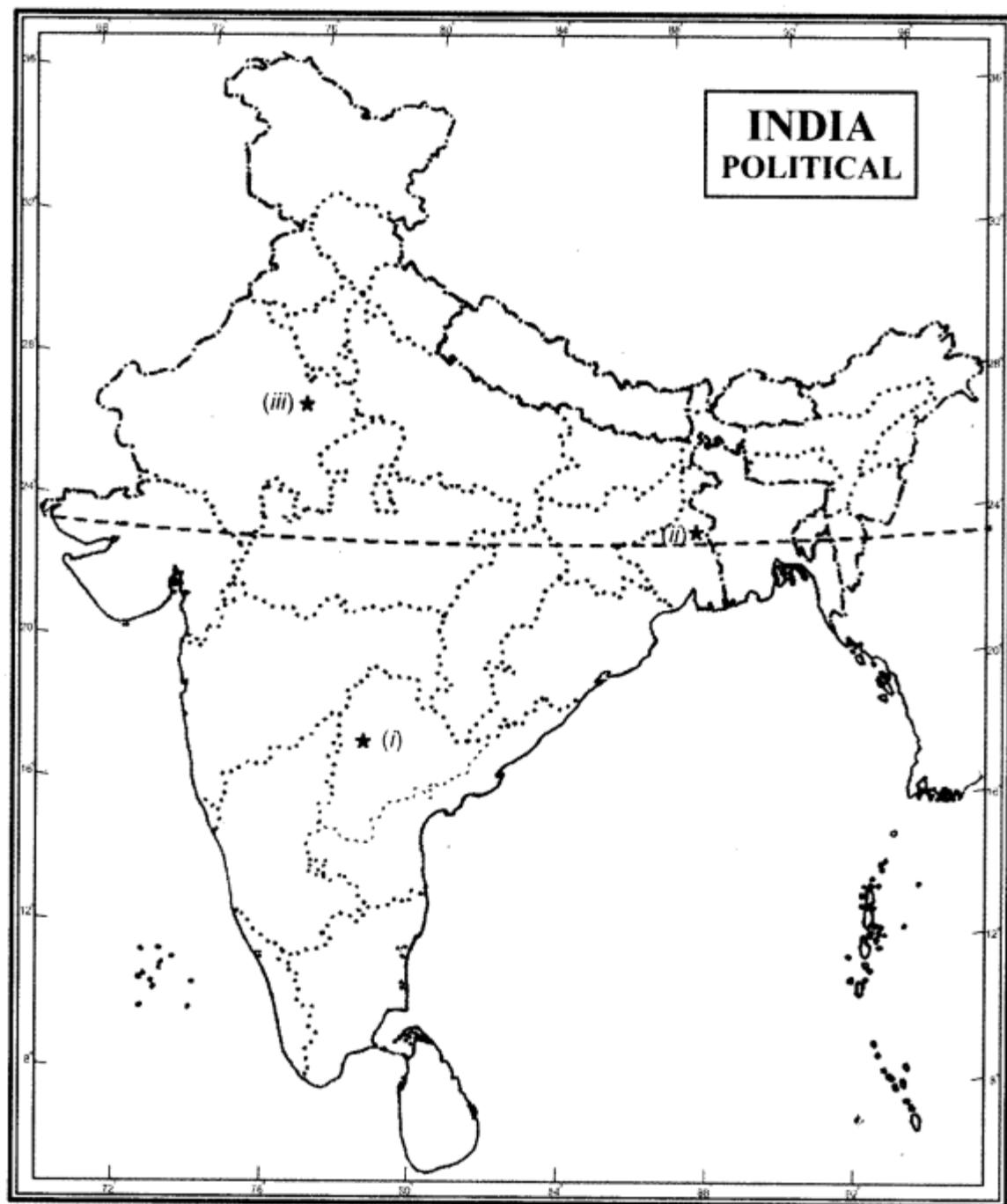
- On the given outline map of India locate and label the following with appropriate symbols.
- (i) Durgapur-Iron and Steel Plant
 - (ii) Bhilai-Iron and steel Plant
 - (iii) Rourkela-Iron and Steel Plant
 - (iv) Gandhinagar Software Technology Park
 - (v) Coimbatore-Cotton textile centre
 - (vi) Srinagar-Woolen industrial centre
 - (vii) Murshidabad-A silk textile centre
 - (viii) Bhadrawati-Iron and Steel Plant
 - (ix) Salem-Iron and Steel Plant
 - (x) Mohali-Software Technology Park
 - (xi) Bokaro-Iron and Steel Industry
 - (xii) Kanpur-Cotton Textile Industry
 - (xiii) Madurai-Cotton Textile Industry
 - (xiv) Bhubaneshwar-Software Technology Park (JCV)
 - (xv) Indore-Software Technology Park
 - (xvi) Jaipur-Software Technology Park

Answer:



- Some features are marked on the given political map of India. Identify them with the help of following information and write their correct names on the lines marked in the maps.
- Software Technology Park
 - Silk Textile Industry
 - Software Technology Park

Answer:



THE RISE OF NATIONALISM IN EUROPE

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [1 MARKS]

- 1. What was the major change that occurred in the political and constitutional scenario due to the French Revolution in Europe?**

Answer:

It led to the transfer of sovereignty from the monarchy to a body of French citizens. The revolution proclaimed that it was the people who would henceforth constitute the nation and shape its destiny.

- 2. What was the main aim of the French revolutionaries?**

Answer:

The main aim of the French revolutionaries was to create a sense of collective identity amongst the French people. They proclaimed that it was the people who would constitute the nation and shape its decisions.

- 3. What is the meaning of concentration camps?**

Answer: Concentration camps are prisons where people are detained and tortured without due process of law.

- 4. Name the Treaty of 1832 that recognised Greece as an independent nation.**

Answer: Treaty of 1832: Constantinople

- 5. Name the event that mobilised nationalist feelings among the educated elite across Europe in 1830-1848?**

Answer: The Greek War of Independence in 1821.

- 6. What was the main aim of revolutionaries of Europe during the years following 1815?**

Answer:

The main aim of revolutionaries of Europe was to oppose monarchial forms of government.

- 7. Who remarked “when France sneezes the rest of Europe catches cold”.**

Answer: Duke Metternich

- 8. Who was proclaimed German Emperor in a ceremony held at Versailles in January 1871?**

Answer: Kaiser William I of Prussia was proclaimed German Emperor in a ceremony held at Versailles in January 1871.

- 9. Who was proclaimed the King of United Italy in 1861?**

Answer: Victor Emmanuel-II

- 10. Who was Frederic Sorrieu?**

Answer:

Frederic Sorrieu was a French artist who visualised a world, made up of democratic and social republics, and put his dream down in a series of four prints.

- 11. What is referred to as Absolutism?**

Answer:

Unrestricted, despotic and authoritarian monarchial system of rule or government is referred to as absolutism.

12. Define Nation.**Answer:**

A body of people who are united by same past, culture, political system and common interests can be defined as a Nation.

13. What was the concept of a nation-state?**Answer:**

The concept of a nation-state was one in which people and rulers of land came together to develop a sense of common identity and shared history.

14. Who hosted the Congress of Vienna in 1815?**Answer:**

Duke Metternich hosted the Congress of Vienna in 1815.

15. What was main aim of the Treaty of Vienna of 1815?**Answer:**

The main aim of the Treaty of Vienna of 1815 was to undo the changes brought about in Europe during the Napoleonic wars.

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [3 MARKS]**16. Explain any three beliefs of the conservatism that emerged after 1815.****Answer:**

Three beliefs of conservatism that emerged after 1815 were:

- Established and traditional institutions of state and society like monarchy, the Church, property and family should be preserved.
- They believed in the modernization of the traditional institution to strengthen them, rather than returning to the society of pre-revolutionary days.
- Also they believed that abolition of feudalism and serfdom and replacing it with a modern army, an efficient bureaucracy and a dynamic economy could strengthen autocratic monarchies of Europe.

17. Explain the contribution of Otto von Bismarck in German unification.**Answer:**

Contribution of Otto von Bismarck in German unification. Nationalist feelings started spreading amongst the middle class Germans, who in 1848, tried to unite different parts of German confederation into a nation state to have an elected parliamentarian government. However, this liberal movement was repressed by the combined forces of monarchy and military supported by Prussian landowners.

Prussian Chief Minister, Otto von Bismarck, took the responsibility of national unification with the help of Prussian army and bureaucracy. Under his leadership he fought three wars over seven years with Austria, Denmark and France. Prussia was victorious in all these wars and the process of unification of Germany was completed as a result of Prussia's victory over France.

18. Explain any three ways in which nationalist feelings were kept alive in Poland in the 18th and 19th centuries.**Answer:**

The three ways in which nationalist feelings were kept alive in 18th and 19th centuries in Poland:
(i) Emphasis on vernacular language. Language played an important role in developing nationalist sentiments. The use of the Polish language came to be seen as a symbol of struggle against Russian dominance. For example, In Poland, following armed rebellion against Russian rule, Polish was used for church gatherings and religious instruction. As a result, a number of priests

and bishops were put in jails or sent to Siberia as punishment for their refusal to preach in Russian.

- (ii) Emphasis on collection of local folklore. It was not just to recover an ancient national spirit, but also to carry the modern nationalist message to the large audience who were mostly illiterate.
- (iii) Use of music to keep the nationalist feeling alive. For example, Karol Kurpinski, celebrated the national struggle through his operas and music, turning folk dances like the polonaise and mazurka into nationalist symbols.

19. Explain the contribution of Giuseppe Mazzini in spreading revolutionary ideas in Europe.

Answer:

The year following 1815, was the period of revolutionaries. Most of the revolutionaries were committed to oppose monarchical forms and to fight for liberty and freedom

One such prominent revolutionary was “Giuseppe Mazzini”, an Italian revolutionary. Mazzini also saw the creation of nation-states as a necessary part in the struggle for freedom. He strongly believed in the unification of Italy as a single unified republic which could be the basis of Italian liberty.

Mazzini’s relentless opposition to monarchy and his vision of a democratic republic frightened the Conservatives. His ideas also influenced the revolutionaries of Germany, France, Switzerland and Poland.

20. Describe any three reforms introduced by Napoleon in the territories he conquered.

Answer:

Three reforms introduced by Napoleon in the territories he conquered were:

- The Napoleonic Code —It finished all the privileges based on birth and established equality before law and secured the right to property.
- He simplified administrative divisions, abolished the feudal system and freed peasants from serfdom and manorial dues.
- He introduced uniform laws, standardized weights and measures and common national currency to facilitate the movement and exchange of goods and capital from one place to another.

21. Explain any three causes of conflict in the ‘Balkan area’ after 1871.

Answer:

The nationalist tensions emerged in the Balkans due to the following reasons:

(i) Balkans was a region of geographical and ethnic variation comprising modern-day Romania, Bulgaria, Albania, Greece, Macedonia, Croatia, Bosnia-Herzegovina, Slovenia, Serbia and Montenegro whose inhabitants were known as the Slavs. A large part of Balkans was under the control of the Ottoman empire.

(ii) After the decline of the Ottoman empire and the growth of romantic nationalism in the Balkans, the region became very explosive. Its European subject nationalities broke away from its control and declared independence.

(iii) As the different nationalities struggled to define their identity and independence, the Balkan area became an area of intense conflict. The Balkan states were fiercely jealous of each other and each hoped to gain more territory at the expense of others.

(iv) Balkan also became the scene of big power rivalry. Russia, Germany, England, Austria, Hungry — all big powers were keen in countering the hold of other powers. This ultimately turned Balkan into a war region which eventually provided a minor cause for the First World War.

22. How did the local people in the areas conquered by Napoleon react to French rule? Explain.

Answer:

The reactions of the local population to the French rule were mixed.

Initially, in many places such as Holland and Switzerland, as well as in cities like Brussels, Mainz, Milan and Warsaw, the French armies were welcomed as harbingers of liberty. As new administrative arrangements did not go hand in hand with political freedom, enthusiasm turned into hostility. Increased taxation, censorship, forced conscription into the French armies to conquer the rest of Europe, outweighed the advantages of the administrative changes.

23. Explain the conditions that were viewed as obstacles to the economic exchange and growth by the new commercial classes during the nineteenth century in Europe.

Answer:

In the economic sphere, liberalism stood for the freedom of markets and the abolition of state-imposed restrictions on movement of goods and capital.

- But in the 19th century Napoleon's administrative measures had created out of countless small principalities a confederation of 39 states. Each possessed its own currency, and weights and measures.
- A merchant travelling from Hamburg to Nuremberg had to pass through 11 custom barriers and pay 5% duty at each one of them.
- As each region had its own system of weights and measures this involved time-consuming calculations.
- Such conditions were viewed as obstacles to economic growth and exchange by the new commercial classes who argued for the creation of a unified economic territory allowing free movement of goods, people and capital.

24. How had the female figures become an allegory of the nation during nineteenth century in Europe? Analyse.

Answer:

Artists in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries portrayed nations as female figures. The female form, that was chosen to personify the nation, did not stand for any particular woman in real life. Rather it sought to give the abstract idea of the nation in concrete form. That is, the female figure became the allegory of the nation.

In France, she was named Marianne —a popular Christian name and in Germany, Germania. Germania wears a crown of oak leaves as the German oak stands for heroism. The characteristics of Marianne were drawn from those of Liberty and Republic —the red cap, the tricolour and cockade.

25. Describe any three economic hardships faced by Europe in the 1830s.

Answer:

Following are the causes of economic hardships in Europe during 1830s:

- Europe had come under the grip of large scale unemployment. In most of the countries there were more seekers of jobs than employment. Cities had become overcrowded and slums had emerged as population from the rural areas migrated to the cities.
- Small producers in towns were often faced with stiff competition from imports of cheap machine-made goods from England where industrialization was more advanced specially in the field of textile production.
- In those regions of Europe, where aristocracy still enjoyed power, peasants struggled under the burden of feudal dues and obligations. The rise of food prices and bad harvests added to the hardships of the peasants.

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [5 MARKS]

26. What did Liberal Nationalism stand for? Explain any four ideas of Liberal Nationalists in the economic sphere.

Answer:

Liberalism or Liberal Nationalism stood for freedom for the individual and equality of all before the law. Four ideas of Liberal Nationalists in the economic sphere are:

- Liberalism stood for freedom of markets and abolition of state imposed restriction. For example, Napoleon's administration was a confederation of 29 states, each of these possessed its own currencies, weight and measures. Such conditions were viewed as obstacles to economic exchange.
- Liberal Nationalists argued for the creation of a unified economic territory allowing the unhindered movement of goods, people and capital.
- In 1834, a customs union or "zollverein" was formed. The union abolished tariff barriers and reduced the number of currencies from 30 to 2.
- The creation of a network of railways further stimulated mobility, harnessing economic interest to national unification.

27. "Napoleon had, no doubt, destroyed democracy in France, but in the administrative field he had incorporated revolutionary principles in order to make the whole system more rational and efficient." Support the statement.

OR

State any three provisions of the Civil Code of 1804.

OR

Explain any three features of the Napoleonic code.

OR

Explain any five social and administrative reforms introduced by Napolean in regions under his control.

Answer:

Napoleon had brought revolutionary changes in the administrative field in order to make the whole system rational and efficient. The Civil Code of 1804 is usually known as the Napoleonic Code.

- The first major change was doing away with all privileges based on birth, establishing equality before law and securing the right to property.
- Administrative divisions were simplified.
- Feudal system was abolished and peasants were freed from serfdom and manorial dues (abuse of manorial lords).
- In towns, guild restrictions were removed.
- Transport and communication systems were improved.
- Peasants, artisans, workers and new businessmen enjoyed a new found freedom.
- Businessmen and small-scale producers of goods in particular began to realize that uniform laws, standardised weights and measures and a common national currency would facilitate the movement and exchange of goods and capital from one region to another.

28. How did nationalism develop through culture in Europe? Explain.

OR

Describe the role of culture in shaping the feelings of nationalism in Europe from 1830 to the end of 19th century.

OR

How did culture play an important role in creating the idea of the 'nation' in Europe?

Explain with examples.

Answer:

Culture, music, dance and religion played an important role in the growth of nationalism.

(i) Role of culture was important in creating the idea of the nation. Art, poetry, music etc. helped in developing and expressing nationalist feelings. Romanticism was a cultural movement that led to the development of nationalist sentiment. Romantic artists and poets criticized the glorification of reason and science and instead focussed on emotions and intuition.

(ii) Artists in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries portrayed nations as female figures. The female form, that was chosen to personify the nation, did not stand for any particular woman in real life. Rather it sought to give the abstract idea of the nation in concrete form. That is, the female figure became the allegory of the nation.

In France, she was named Marianne—a popular Christian name and in Germany, Germania.

(iii) Language too played an important role in developing nationalist sentiments. After Russian occupation, the Polish language was forced out of schools and Russian language was imposed everywhere. In 1831, an armed rebellion against Russian rule took place which was ultimately crushed. Following this, many members of the clergy in Poland began to use language as a weapon of national resistance.

(iv) Romantics such as the German philosopher Herder claimed that true German culture was to be discovered among the common people – das volk. It was through folk songs, folk poetry and folk dances that the true spirit of the nation was popularized.

29. Explain any five economic hardships that Europe faced in the 1830s.

OR

“The decade of 1830 has brought great economic hardship in Europe”. Support the statement with arguments.

Answer:

Following are the causes of economic hardships in Europe during 1830s:

- Europe had come under the grip of large scale unemployment. In most of the countries there were more seekers of jobs than employment.
- Cities had become overcrowded and slums had emerged as population from the rural areas migrated to the cities.
- Small producers in towns were often faced with stiff competition from imports of cheap machine-made goods from England where industrialization was more advanced specially in the field of textile production.
- In those regions of Europe, where aristocracy still enjoyed power, peasants struggled under the burden of feudal dues and obligations.
- The rise of food prices and bad harvests added to the hardships of the peasants.

30. Describe any three steps taken by the French revolutionaries to create a sense of collective identity amongst the French people.

OR

Describe the events of French Revolution which had influenced the people belonging to other parts of Europe.

OR

Describe any five measures which were introduced by the French Revolutionaries to create a sense of collective identity amongst the French people.

Answer:

The first clear-cut expression of nationalism came with the French Revolution in 1789. In 1789, France was under the rule of an absolute monarch.

When the revolutionaries came to power in France, they were determined to create a new sense of unity and nationhood. For this, they emphasized the concept of France being the father land (La Patrie) for all French people, who were from now on addressed as citizens (citoyen). They were given the tri-colour flag, the three colours representing liberty, equality and fraternity.

French revolutionaries introduced various other measures such as:

- The Estate General was elected by the body of active citizens and renamed the National Assembly.
- New hymns were composed, oaths taken and martyrs commemorated all in the name of the nation.

- A centralized administrative system was put in place and it formulated uniform laws for all citizens within its territory.
- Internal customs, duties and dues were abolished and a uniform system of weights and measures was adopted.
- Regional dialects were discouraged and French, as it was spoken and written in Paris, became the common language of the nation.
- They further declared that it was the mission and the destiny of the French nation to liberate the people of Europe from despotism and help them to become nations.

31. How had revolutionaries spread their ideas in many European States after 1815? Explain with examples.

Answer:

During the years following 1815, the fear of repression drove many liberal nationalists underground.

- Secret societies sprang up in many European states to train revolutionaries and spread their ideas. Revolutionary ideas were spread by opposing monarchical forms and to fight for liberty and freedom.
- Most of the revolutionaries also saw the creation of nation-states as a necessary part of this struggle for freedom.
- Giuseppe Mazzini was an Italian revolutionary born in Geneva in 1807. He was a member of the Secret Society of the Carbonari. He attempted a revolution in 1831 and was sent into exile.
- He had set up two more underground societies, namely, Young Italy (1832) in Marseilles and then Young Europe in Berne. The members were like-minded young men from Poland, France, Italy and Germany.
- He opposed monarchy and small states and kingdoms and dreamt of a Democratic Republic. He believed the unification of Italy alone could be the basis of Italian liberty.

32. How was the Habsburg Empire a patchwork of many different regions and people in Europe? Explain.

Answer:

Habsburg Empire was a patchwork of many different regions and people as the Alpine regions—the Tyrol, Austria and the Sudetenland were part of it. The Italian speaking provinces of Lombardy and Venetia were also included in it. Different languages and dialects were spoken by different sections of society throughout the empire. For example, in Bohemia, the nobility or the aristocrats spoke German and Lombardy and Venetia were the provinces where Italian was spoken. Polish was the language of aristocracy in Galicia. Besides, these three dominant groups, there also lived peasantry, within the boundaries of Empire such as Bohemians and Slovaks to the north, Slovenes in Carniola, Croats to the south and Roumans to the east in Transylvania. Loyalty to the emperor was the only tie binding these groups that were so different from each other.

33. Describe the process of unification of Germany.

Answer:

Unification of Germany:

In the 18th century, Germany was divided into a number of states. Some of these states ceased to exist during the Napoleonic wars. At the end of the war, there were still 39 independent states in Germany. Prussia was most powerful, dominated by big landlords known as Junkers.

- (i) Nationalist feelings were widespread among middle class Germans who had tried to unite the different regions of the German federation into a nation-state governed by an elected Parliament.
- (ii) In May 1848, a large number of political associations came together to vote for an All German National Assembly. Their representatives met at Frankfurt and the Frankfurt Assembly proposed the unification of Germany as a constitutional monarchy under the King of Prussia as emperor.

(iii) The King of Prussia rejected the offer and the liberal initiative of nation building was repressed by combined forces of the monarchy, the military and the 'Junkers'.

(iv) Then on, Prussia under its Chief Minister Otto von Bismarck led the movement for unification of Germany. Bismarck carried out this process with the help of the Prussian army and the bureaucracy. He fought three wars over seven years with Denmark, Austria and France. Prussia was victorious in all these wars and the process of unification was completed as a result of Prussia's victory over France.

(v) Consequently, on 18th January 1871, an assembly comprising of princes of German states, representatives of the army, important Prussian ministers and Bismarck gathered in the Palace of Versailles and proclaimed the Prussian King, Kaiser William, the new German Emperor.

34. Explain the process of unification of Italy.

Answer:

Italy too had a long history of political fragmentation. Italians were scattered over dynastic states and the multinationals Hamburg Empire. Italy was divided into seven states. Italian language did not have one common form.

Guisepppe Mazzini had played an important role in the unification of Italy. He formed a secret society called 'Young Italy' in Marseilles, to spread his goals. He believed Italy could not continue to be a patchwork of small states and had to be forged into a single unified republic. During 1830s, Mazzini sought to put together a coherent programme for a unitary Italian Republic. As uprisings in 1831 and 1848 had failed, the mantle now fell on Sardinia-Piedmont under its ruler Emmanuel II to unify Italy.

Under Chief Minister Cavour, Sardinia-Piedmont succeeded in defeating the Austrian forces in 1859. He was the chief minister, who led the movement to unify Italy. He formed a tactful diplomatic alliance with France and defeated the Austrian forces. Even Guisepppe Garibaldi joined the fray. In 1860, they marched towards South Italy and the Kingdom of the two Sicilies, and with the help of the local peasants, drove out the Spanish rulers. In 1861, Victor Emmanuel II was proclaimed as King of United Italy.

35. Describe the process of Unification of Britain.

OR

How has Britain come into existence? Explain.

Answer:

Nationalism in Britain was different from the rest of Europe.

(i) Nationalism in Britain was not the result of a sudden uprising or revolution. It was the result of a long drawn out process.

(ii) There was no British nation prior to 18th century. The inhabitants of British Isles were ethnic ones — English, Welsh, Scot or Irish. Though each had their own culture and political traditions, the English nation steadily grew in wealth, importance and power and expanded its influence over other nations, such as Scotland.

(iii) The British Parliament was dominated by its English members. They tried to suppress Scotland's distinct culture and political institutions. They could neither speak their language nor could they wear their national dress. A large number of them were driven out of their homeland.

(iv) In 1688, through a bloodless revolution the English Parliament seized power from the monarchy and became the instrument to set up a nation-state at its centre.

(v) By the Act of Union in 1707, Scotland was incorporated in the United Kingdom. Though the Irish Catholics were against a union with England, Ireland was forcibly incorporated in United Kingdom in 1801.

(vi) Thus it was parliamentary action and not revolution or war that was the instrument through which the British nation was formed.

(vii) A new 'British Nation' was formed through propagation of English culture. The symbols of the New Britain—"the British Flag (Union Jack), National Anthem (God save our noble King)

and the English language" were promoted, and the older nations became the subordinate partners in the Union.

36. Write briefly about the political conditions in Europe in the 1870s.

Answer:

The following were the conditions in Europe in the 1870s.

- (a) By the last quarter of the 19th century, liberaldemocratic sentiment could not be maintained by the nationalists.
- (b) Nationalism was now sought to have narrow aims and beliefs with limited means.
- (c) Trust on each other and tolerance among the nationalist groups disappeared.
- (d) They just wanted to accomplish their aims at the cost of others.
- (e) Even the nationalist aspirations of the subject people were manipulated towards the fulfilment of their imperialistic goals.
- (f) A new definition of nationalism emerged which created havoc in the world order. (any five)

37. Discuss the role played by the women in nationalist struggles.

Answer:

Women played a vital role in the nationalist struggles around the world.

- (a) Women from many parts of Europe like Germany, Italy and Poland actively supported the liberals demanding constitutional monarchy with national unification.
- (b) They too joined their demands for political rights' like suffrage' along with the struggle of the liberals. But in spite of their active participation, extension of political rights to them remained a controversial issue.
- (c) They took advantage of the unrest in Europe to push their demands for freedom of press and association and creation of a nation-state.
- (d) They even formed their own political associations and founded their newspapers.
- (e) They held political meetings and staged demonstrations to gain support to their demands. But they were denied suffrage rights during the assembly elections. When the Frankfurt parliament was being convened in the St Paul Church, they were granted admission merely as spectators.

38. Who were the 'liberals'? What ideas were supported by them?

Answer:

Liberals were the people who demanded freedom and equality. The term liberalism was derive from the Latin root liber which meant 'to be free'. They wanted to establish a constitutional and parliamentary government with national unification. They advocated freedom for the individual and equality of all before the law. Liberals constituted of professionals, businessmen and prosperous artisans.

The following ideas were supported by the Liberals:

- (a) They thought it necessary to create a nation-state on parliamentary principles. They emphasised on the concept of government by consent.
- (b) They demanded the formation of a national assembly and drafting of a constitution.
- (c) They firmly held the ideas of freedom of press and association.
- (d) They asserted that right to vote be granted only to men owning property.
- (e) They stressed on the idea of right to private property.

39. What is the significance of 1848 for France and the rest of Europe? What did the liberals demand?

Answer:

In 1848 Europe, the poor, unemployed workers and starving peasants led many revolts. In France, the educated middle class too started a revolution for the abolition of monarchy and establishment of a republic based on universal male suffrage. They took advantage of the growing popular unrest to put forward their demands for the creation of a nation-state based on parliamentary principles with a constitution, freedom of press and association. Political rights for women was an

issue in which large number of women took active part. They formed political associations and published newspapers voicing their demands.

Men and women from the liberal middle classes around Europe combined their demands for constitutionalism alongwith national unification.

40. How did the Greek War of Independence mobilise nationalist feeling among the educated elite across Europe?

Answer:

Greece was the part of Ottoman Empire since the fifteenth century.

- (a) The Greeks were influenced by the growth of revolutionary nationalism in Europe and they started a struggle for their independence in 1821.
 - (b) Nationalists in Greece got support from the Greeks residing in different countries.
 - (c) Even the West European countries sympathised with the Greek and their ancient culture.
 - (d) Poets and artists too admired Greece as the basis of European civilisation and mobilised public opinion in its support. English poet Lord Byron even organised fund and participated in the war.
 - (e) Finally, in 1832, Greece was recognised as an independent nation by the Treaty of Constantinople.
-

NATIONALISM IN INDIA

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [3 MARKS]

1. Who had designed the ‘Swaraj Flag’ by 1921? Explain the main features of the ‘Swaraj Flag’.

Answer:

By 1921, Gandhiji had designed the Swaraj Flag. The main features of this flag were as follows.

- It was a tricolour (red, green and white).
- It had a spinning wheel in the centre, representing the Gandhian ideal of self-help.

2. ‘The Civil Disobedience Movement was different from the Non-Cooperation Movement.’ Support the statement with examples.

Answer:

The Civil Disobedience Movement differed from the Non-Cooperation Movement in the following ways.

Civil Disobedience Movement	Non-Cooperation Movement
<p>(a) This movement dealt with the breaking of the laws formed by the British government.</p> <p>(b) The main aim being violation of laws, it was carried out by breaking salt law and forest laws besides holding demonstrations.</p> <p>(c) This movement was launched basically to attain Purna Swaraj and because the eleven demands of Congress were denied.</p>	<p>(a) This movement was for not following the rules of government. It did not deal with violation of laws.</p> <p>(b) It was carried out through peaceful demonstrations and picketing foreign shops.</p> <p>(c) This movement was launched in order to unify Hindus and Muslims and to attain Swaraj.</p>

3. What type of flag was designed during the Swadeshi Movement’ in Bengal? Explain its main features.

Answer:

- During the ‘Swadeshi Movement’ in Bengal, a tricolour flag (red, green and yellow) was designed. Nationalism in India 39
- It had eight lotuses, representing eight provinces of British India.
- It also had a crescent moon, representing Hindus and Muslims.

4. ‘The plantation workers in Assam had their own understanding of Mahatma Gandhi and the notion of Swaraj.’ Support the statement with arguments.

Answer:

The plantation workers in Assam had their own understanding of Mahatma Gandhi and the notion of Swaraj. This statement can be supported by the following arguments.

- For plantation workers in Assam, freedom meant right to move freely in and out of the confined space in which they were enclosed, and to retain a link with the native village.
- When they heard of the Non-Cooperation Movement thousands of workers left the plantations and headed home.
- They believed that Gandhi Raj meant that they would be given land in their own villages. However, due to steamer and railway strike, thousands were stranded on the way..

5. Why did different social groups join the Civil Disobedience Movement. Explain.

Answer:

Different social groups joined the Civil Disobedience Movement. Three of them are listed below.

- Rich peasant communities like Patidars of Gujarat and Jats of Uttar Pradesh – joined the movement because, being producers of commercial crops, they were hard-hit by depression and falling prices. For them, Swaraj meant struggle against high revenues.
 - Poor peasants joined the struggle because they found it difficult to pay the rent. They wanted the unpaid rent to be remitted.
 - Rich business classes were against colonial policies which restricted trade. They joined the movement because they wanted protection against import of foreign goods. They thought that Swaraj would cancel colonial restrictions and trade would flourish without constraints.
6. **“The Congress was reluctant to include the demands of industrial workers in its programme of struggle.” Analyze the reasons.**

Answer:

- Congress wanted to include the demands of the masses as a whole and not a particular group or class.
- If the demand of the workers were included, then industrialists would get offended. The industrialists were supporting the Congress financially. The Congress did not want to alienate the industrialists and create anti-imperialist feelings.
- A big portion of the Congress membership and funding came from industrialists and small businessmen.

7. **Why did the Non-Cooperation Movement gradually slow down in the cities? Explain.**

Answer:

The Non-Cooperation Movement slowed down in the cities for various reasons.

- Khadi cloth was often more expensive than mass-produced mill cloth and poor people could not afford to buy it. So people could not boycott mill cloth for very long.
- Similarly boycotting British institutions also posed a problem as there were no alternative national institutions to fulfil the educational needs.
- The students and teachers trickled to government schools. The lawyers joined government courts.

With all these, the enthusiasm of people in the cities lost its force.

8. **Why did Mahatma Gandhiji decide to withdraw the Non-Cooperation Movement in February 1922? Explain the reasons.**

Answer:

Gandhiji withdrew the Non-Cooperation Movement in February 1922 because of the following reasons.

- Gandhiji felt the movement was turning violent at many places and the satyagrahis needed to be properly trained before they would be ready for the mass struggle.
- Within the Congress some leaders were by now tired of mass struggles and wanted to participate in the elections to the provincial councils set up after by the Government of India Act 1919.
- The final blow however came after the violent incident in Chauri Chaura in 1922 when a violent mob burnt a police station killing many policemen. Immediately after that, Gandhiji called off the Non-Cooperation Movement.

9. **Describe the main features of ‘Poona Pact’.**

Answer:

At the second Round Table conference, Dr BR Ambedkar demanded separate electorates for dalits. When the British conceded Dr Ambedkar’s demand, Gandhiji, who was opposed to this, went on a fast unto death. He believed that separate electorates for dalits would slow down the process of their integration into society. Ambedkar ultimately accepted Gandhiji’s position by signing a pact in 1932, known as the Poona Pact. The Poona Pact gave the depressed classes

reserved seats in the provincial and legislative councils but they were to be voted by general electorate.

10. How did Salt March become an effective tool of resistance against colonialism? Explain.

Answer:

Salt became an effective tool of resistance against colonialism because of the following reasons:

- Gandhiji found in salt a powerful bond that would unite the nations as it – was consumed by all rich and poor alike.
- Gandhiji's letter to Viceroy Irwin stated eleven demands. Most of them were of general interest but the most stirring was to abolish the salt tax imposed by the colonial government.
- Irwin's unwillingness to negotiate forced Gandhiji to start his salt March which was joined by thousands. It developed the feeling of nationalism.
- People in different parts of the country broke salt law and manufactured salt and demonstrated in front of government salt factories.
- People unitedly followed Gandhiji's words. They refused to pay taxes, revenues, picketed liquor shops, boycotted foreign clothes, resigned from government jobs violated forest laws. (any three)

11. Describe any three major problems faced by the peasants of Awadh in the days of Non-Cooperation Movement.

Answer:

Major problems faced by the peasants of Awadh were:

- The landlords and talukdars of Awadh demanded exorbitantly high land rent and a number of other cesses from the peasants.
- The peasants were compelled to do beggar, that is, they had to work at landlord's farm without payment.
- As tenants, the peasants had no security of tenure and were often evicted from their land, they could not acquire any right over the leased land.

12. How could non-cooperation become a movement? Give your opinion.

Answer:

Non-cooperation became a movement in the following ways.

- The idea of non-cooperation was first introduced by Gandhiji in his book Hind Swaraj, where he declared that since the British had established their rule in India with the cooperation of the Indians, it would collapse only when the cooperation was withdrawn.
- Initially non-cooperation was to start in stages with the surrender of British honours and titles, boycott of British offices, institutions and foreign goods followed by civil disobedience campaign. Finally at Nagpur session of Congress in 1920, the programme of Non-Cooperation was adopted.
- In case the government used repressive methods, a full scale Civil Disobedience campaign would then be launched.
- At the same time Gandhiji and Shaukat Ali began touring and mobilising support for the movement. (any three)

13. How did the industrialists relate to the Civil Disobedience Movement? Analyse their role.

Answer:

- During the First World War, Indian merchants and industrialists made huge profits and emerged as a powerful section. They opposed colonial policies that restricted business activities because they wanted to expand their business.
- They formed Indian Industrial and Commercial Congress in 1920 and the Federation of the Indian Chamber of Commerce and Industries (FICCI) in 1927.
- They supported the Civil Disobedience Movement when it was launched and attacked colonial control over the Indian economy.

- They gave financial assistance and refused to buy or sell imported goods. Most businessmen came to see swaraj as a time when colonial restrictions on business would no longer exist and trade and industry would flourish without constraints
- Eminent businessmen like Purshotamdas, Thakurdas and GD Birla also came in support of the Civil Disobedience Movement. (any three)

14. How did women participate in Civil Disobedience Movement? Explain.

Answer:

One of the most important features of the Civil Disobedience Movement was the large-scale participation of women. They participated in the movement in the following ways.

- During Gandhiji's salt satyagraha, thousands of women came out of their homes and engaged themselves in various activities.
- They participated in protest marches, manufactured salt and picketed shops selling foreign goods, liquor, etc.
- Many of them were arrested and went to jail.
- In urban areas, women from high-caste families whereas in rural areas women from the rich peasant households, inspired by Gandhiji's call, regarded service to the nation as a sacred duty. (any three)

15. Simon Commission was greeted with slogan 'Go Back Simon' at arrival in India. Support this reaction of Indians with arguments

Answer:

- Simon Commission was to look into the functioning of the constitutional system in India and suggest changes. The Commission is not have a single Indian member. They were all British. According to Indians, the commission did not hold any hopes for further constitutional reforms.
- Simon Commission arrived in India in 1928. It was greeted with the slogan 'Go Back Simon' and black flags.
- All parties including the Congress and Muslim League, participated in the demonstrations.

16. Explain the idea of Satyagraha according to Gandhiji.

Answer:

- Satyagraha emphasized on the power of truth and the need to search for truth.
- It was a novel method of protesting through mass agitation, without the use of force, the oppressor could be persuaded to see the truth and it will ultimately triumph.
- It suggested that in a struggle against injustice, if the cause is right, there was no need for aggression or physical force. Victory could be won by appealing to the conscience of the oppressor.

17. Describe any three suppressive measures taken by the British administration to clamp down on nationalists.

Answer:

Mahatma Gandhi wanted non-violent civil disobedience movement against the Rowlatt Act which would start with a hartal on 6 April. Alarmed by the popular upsurge, the British administration decided to clamp down on nationalists.

- Local leaders were picked up from Amritsar.
- Gandhiji was barred from entering Delhi.
- On 10 April, the police in Amritsar opened fire upon a peaceful procession which led to widespread attack on banks, post offices and railway stations. Martial law was imposed and General Dyer took command.

18. Describe the main features of the 'Salt March'.

Answer:

The main features of the 'Salt March' were:

- Gandhiji started the historic Dandi March (Salt March) from Sabarmati Ashram, (Ahmedabad) accompanied by 78 trusted volunteers.
- The distance from Sabarmati Ashram to Dandi, a coastal town on the coast of Gujarat was 240 miles.
- The volunteers walked for 24 days, 10 miles a day.
- Thousands of people came to hear Gandhiji. He explained the meaning of Swaraj to them.
- On 6th April, he reached Dandi, violated the salt law and manufactured salt by boiling sea water. (any three)

19. How was Rowlatt Act opposed by the people in India? Explain with examples.

Answer:

The Rowlatt Act was opposed by Indians in the following ways:

- A non-violent civil disobedience against the unjust law began.
- There were hartals and rallies organised in the whole of the country.
- Workers in the railway workshops went on strike.
- Shops were closed down in protest. (any three explanation)

20. ‘Some of the Muslim political organizations in India, were lukewarm in their response to ‘Civil Disobedience Movement’. Examine the statement.

Answer:

When Gandhiji called the Civil Disobedience Movement, Muslims were lukewarm in their response due to

- The disappointment with Non-Cooperation Movement and how it ended without any concrete outcome.
- The Congress had become visibly associated with the Hindu nationalist groups like the Hindu Mahasabha, making large sections of Muslims feel alienated.
- The relations between Hindus and Muslims worsened as each community began organising religious processions.
- In 1927 the Congress and Muslim League tried to negotiate a compromise, but some important differences remained unsolved.
- Muslim leaders were concerned about the minority status of Muslims in India. Negotiations over the question of representation continued but all hopes of resolving the issue at the All Party Conference disappeared, when Hindu Mahasabha strongly opposed efforts at compromise. So when Civil Disobedience began, there was an atmosphere of distrust and suspicion among the communities and Muslim response was lukewarm. (any three)

21. ‘Nationalism spreads when people begin to believe that they are all part of the same nation.’ Justify the statement.

Answer:

The three attributes of a nation, according to Renan are:

- A nation is formed when there is a long past of sacrifices and devotion.
- A national idea comes into existence when there is a heroic past, glory and great men. It is the foundation of nation building.
- The people should have the will to work together for a common goal. All these factors give rise to nationalism because people feel they are part of a same nation.

22. Explain any three measures taken by the British administration to repress the movement started against the Rowlatt Act.

Answer:

Following were the measures taken by the British administration to repress the movement started against the Rowlatt Act:

- Alarmed by the popular upsurge, British decided to clamp down on nationalists.
- Local leaders were arrested and Gandhiji was banned from entering Delhi.

- There were firing on peaceful procession.
 - Seeing the situation out of control, Martial law was imposed, (any three)
23. **Which were the two types of demands mentioned by Gandhiji in his letter to Viceroy Irwin on 31 January 1930? Why was the abolition of ‘salt tax’ most stirring demand? Explain.**
- Answer:**
- On 31 January 1930, Gandhiji wrote a letter to Lord Irwin, stating eleven demands. Some of the demands were of general nature, others were more specific demands from industrialists to peasants. They were wide ranging demands, so that all classes could identify with them and they could be brought under the common campaign. The most stirring demand was to abolish salt tax. Salt is item of food, consumed by all sections of the society. It is one of the most essential food item. The tax on salt and government monopoly over its production, showed the most oppressive face of British rule.
24. **Explain the effects of ‘worldwide economic depression’ on India, towards late 1920s.**
- Answer:**
- The effects of worldwide economic depression were:
- There was a fall in agricultural prices from 1926 and it collapsed after 1930.
 - As the demand for agricultural goods fall and exports declined, peasants found it difficult to sell their harvest and pay the revenue.
 - In the countryside, rich peasant communities were the producers of commercial crops. They were hard hit by trade depression and falling prices. By 1930, the countryside was in turmoil.
25. **How did colonial government react as the Civil Disobedience Movement spread in the country? Explain any three points.**
- Answer:**
- The colonial government reacted to the spread of Civil Disobedience Movement in the following ways:
- Prominent Congress leaders such as Abdul Ghaffar Khan and Gandhiji began to be arrested.
 - The government used the policy of brutal repression to clamp down the demonstrators.
 - Peaceful satyagrahis were attacked, women and children were beaten and lakhs of people were arrested.
26. **How was history re-interpreted in creating a feeling of nationalism? Explain with examples.**
- Answer:**
- By the end of the 19th century, many Indian felt that people should take pride in their glorious past and started re-interpreting history.
- The British saw Indians as backward and primitive people incapable of governing themselves. The Indians began looking into the past to discover India’s great achievements.
 - In India, during ancient times there was an all round development in mathematics and science, in art and architecture, religion and philosophy, culture and law. Trade with other countries flourished during ancient times.
 - The glorious time was followed by period of decline when India was colonised.
27. **How did the peasants who gathered around Nehru near Rae Bareli behave when he addressed them? Explain what Nehru meant when he said, “I needed the lesson more than they.”**
- Answer:**
- The peasants gathered around Nehru were calm and peaceful to hear him address them. Nehru meant to say that inspite of brutal and displeased behavior of police, the peasants remained peaceful. On the other hand he had forgotten nonviolence totally at that moment and he was very agitated and disturbed. The peasants taught him a lesson that he was supposed to have been their leader.

28. "A Satyagrahi wins the battle through non-violence." Explain with examples.

Answer: A Satyagrahi wins the battle through non-violence. This statement emphasizes the power of truth and the need to search for truth. It suggested that if the cause is true, if the struggle is against injustice, then physical force is not necessary to fight against the oppressor. Without being aggressive a satyagrahi could win the battle. This could be done by appealing to the conscience of the oppressors instead of forcing them to accept truth through the use of violence.

29. Who was the President of the Congress when the decision was taken to celebrate 26 January 1930 as Independence Day? Why must India sever the British connection and attain Purna Swaraj? Explain briefly.

Answer: Jawaharlal Nehru was the President of the Congress when the decision was taken to celebrate 26 January 1930 as Independence Day. India must sever the British connection because the British deprived Indians of their rights and oppressed and exploited them and has ruined India economically, politically, culturally and spiritually to the fullest.

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [5 MARKS]

30. Why did Gandhiji decide to launch a nationwide Satyagraha against the proposed Rowlatt Act of 1919? How was it organized?

Answer: Gandhiji decided to launch a nationwide Satyagraha against the proposed Rowlatt Act of 1919 because of the following reasons.

- In 1919, Rowlatt Act was hurriedly passed by the Imperial Legislative Council.
- Indian members unitedly opposed it.
- The Act gave the government enormous powers to repress political activities and allowed detention of political prisoners without trial for two years.
- The Act deprived the Indians of their civil rights.
It was organised in the following ways:
 - Gandhiji wanted a non-violent civil disobedience against such unjust laws.
 - It started with hartal on 6th April 1919.
 - Rallies were organised in various cities in India.
 - Workers in the railway work shop went on strike.
 - Shops were closed down in protest. (any five explanation)

**31. Why did Mahatma Gandhi find in 'salt' a powerful symbol that could unite the nation?
Explain.**

Answer: Mahatma Gandhi found in 'salt' a powerful symbol that could unite the nation.

- On 31 January 1930, he sent a letter to the Viceroy Irwin, stating eleven demands. The most important demand was to abolish the salt tax.
- Salt is consumed by all sections of the society, by the rich and the poor alike.
- It is one of the most essential items of food.
- Mahatma Gandhi declared that tax on salt and government monopoly over its production was the most oppressive step taken by the British government.
- Mahatma Gandhi chose salt because all sections of the society could identify with it and everyone could be brought into a united struggle.

**32. How did variety of cultural processes play an important role in making nationalism in India.
Explain with examples.**

Answer:

Variety of cultural processes played an important role in making of nationalism , in India in the following ways:

- The sense of collective belonging inculcated the spirit of nationalism among the people. History and fiction, folklore and songs and popular prints and symbols played an important part in the making of nationalism.

- Bharat mata as identity of the nation: In the twentieth century, various images of Bharat mata, came to light. It represented India. Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay, who had written Vande mataram as a hymn dedicated to the motherland, created the first image of Bharat mata. Abanindranath Tagore portrayed Bharat mata, as a calm, composed and spiritual figure. It was influenced by the Swadeshi movement.
- Folklore to restore a sense of pride: Rabindranath Tagore revived folk songs, folk tales, hymns, legends and stories. In Madras, Natesa Sastri published a collection of Tamil folktales the Folklore of southern India.
- Flags as identity of the Nation: During the Swadeshi Movement flags were carried to create a sense of national belonging. Carrying the flag and holding it aloft during marches became a symbol of defiance.
- Reinterpretation of History: Another means of creating a feeling of nationalism was through reinterpretation of history. Many Indians wrote about the glorious developments in ancient times, when art and architecture, mathematics and science flourished. They urged the readers to take pride in their glorious past.

33. Why did Mahatma Gandhi decide to call off the Civil Disobedience Movement? Explain.

Answer: Mahatma Gandhi decided to call off the Civil Disobedience Movement because of the following reasons.

- The British got worried by the developments of Civil Disobedience Movement and started the arrest of various top Congress leaders.
- This led to violent clashes in many parts of the country.
- When Abdul Ghaffar Khan was arrested from Peshawar, angry crowd demonstrated in the streets facing armoured cars and police firing many were killed.
- The arrest of Gandhiji led to the attacks on police force, municipal buildings and law courts by industrial workers in Sholapur.
- Colonial government got frightened and responded with the policy of brutal repression.
- At many places, Satyagrahis were attacked, women and children were beaten and about one lakh people were arrested. It was under these circumstances, Gandhiji called off the Civil Disobedience Movement. (any five)

34. Why did Mahatma Gandhi relaunch the Civil Disobedience Movement with great apprehension? Explain.

Answer: Gandhiji relaunched the Civil Disobedience Movement with great apprehension because of the following reasons.

- The negotiations at the second Round Table conference in London ended in a failure.
- Back in India, the government had again begun the cycle of repression.
- Abdul Ghaffar Khan and Jawaharlal Nehru were in jail.
- Congress was declared an illegal organisation.
- A series of measures had been imposed to prevent meetings, demonstrations and boycotts. For over a year, the movement continued, but by 1934, it lost its momentum.

35. How did Civil Disobedience Movement come into force in various parts of the country?

Explain with examples.

Answer: The different social groups which participated in the Civil Disobedience Movement were:

- In the countryside, the rich peasant communities like Patidars of Gujarat and Jats of Uttar Pradesh took active part in the movement. They were hard hit by trade depression and falling prices and were unable to pay the governments revenue demand. For them Swaraj meant struggle against high revenue.
- As depression continued poor peasantry found it difficult to pay the rent. They joined a variety of radical movements often led by socialists and communists.

- Indian merchants and industrialists resented colonial policies which restricted trade. They were against imports of foreign goods. When the civil disobedience movement was first launched, they gave financial assistance and refused to buy or sell imported cloth. To organise business interests, they formed the Indian Industrial and Commercial Congress in 1920 and Federation of the Indian Chamber of Commerce and Industries (FICCI) in 1927.
- Some workers participated in the movement with their selective approach adopted from Gandhian ideas to protest against low wages and poor working conditions. There were strikes by railway workers and dockyard workers. Thousands of workers in Chotanagpur tin mines wore Gandhi caps and participated in protest rallies and boycott campaigns.
- Women joined the Civil Disobedience Movement in large number. They participated in protest marches, manufactured salt and picketed foreign cloth and liquor shops.

36. How did the ‘First World War’ create new economic and political situations in India? Explain with examples.

Answer: The First World War created a new economic and political situation and posed the following problems in India.

- It led to a huge increase in defence expenditure which was financed by increasing taxes on Indians.
- Custom duties were raised and income tax was introduced.
- Continuous price rise caused extreme hardship to the common people.
- Villagers were called upon to supply soldiers by forced recruitment in rural areas which caused widespread anger. All this was aggravated by failure of crop and famine.
- Between 1918 and 1921 crops failed, which further aggravated the anger.
- Shortage of essential commodities was the natural outcome of war as industries were geared to produce goods to fulfill war needs. (any five)

37. How had Non-Cooperation Movement spread to the countryside? Explain.

Answer: Non-Cooperation Movement began in December 1920. It spread to the countryside in the following ways.

- The movement started with the participation of middle-class in the cities. Thousands of students left the government-controlled schools and colleges, teachers resigned and lawyers gave up their practice. It was to be a nonviolent movement.
- In Awadh, peasants were led by Baba Ramchandra. Here, the movement was against talukdars, who charged high rents and peasants had to do beggar.
- The peasant movement demanded reduction of revenue and abolition of beggar. By the end of 1920, Jawaharlal Nehru, Baba Ramchandra and others had formed Oudh Kisan Sabha. So after the beginning of the Non- Cooperation Movement, Congress wanted to integrate the Awadh peasants struggle into a wider struggle.
- Tribal peasants interpreted the message of Gandhiji and idea of swaraj in their own way. In Gudem Hills in Andhra Pradesh, a militant guerrilla movement was organised against colonial oppression under the leadership of Alluri Sitaram Raju. He was inspired by the Non-Cooperation Movement.
- The Gudem rebels attacked police stations, attempted to kill British officials and carried on guerrilla warfare for achieving swaraj.
- The movement also spread among the plantation workers in Assam. They were not permitted to leave the tea gardens without permission. (any five)

38. How did the Non-Cooperation Movement spread in cities across the country? Explain its effects on the economic front.

Answer:

- The Non-Cooperation Movement started with middle-class participation in the cities. Thousands of students left government-controlled schools and colleges, the teachers resigned and the lawyers gave up their lucrative practices.

- The council elections were boycotted in most provinces. Shops selling foreign goods were picketed and foreign goods boycotted.
The effects of non-cooperation on the economic front were extensive.
- Boycotting of foreign goods, liquor and clothes hit the colonial economy.
Value of foreign goods dropped. The import of foreign cloth dropped significantly between 1921 and 1922.
- At many places merchants and traders refused to trade in foreign goods or finance foreign trade.
- As the movement spread, people began to discard imported clothes and started to wear khadi and other homemade clothes. This promoted Indian textile mills and the production of handloom went up

39. Describe the incident and impact of the Jallianwala Bagh.

Answer:

On 13 April, a crowd of villagers gathered in an enclosed ground of Jallianwala Bagh near Amritsar. These people came there to attend a fair and were unaware of the current political situation or about the martial law imposed by the military governor General Dyer. Dyer entered the ground, blocked the exit points and opened fire on the innocent crowd, killing hundreds. This incident is referred to as the Jallianwala Bagh massacre. General Dyer declared that his main aim was to produce a moral effect and to create a feeling of terror and awe in the mind of the satyagrahis. This incident proved to be a turning point in the Indian national movement. As the news of Jallianwala Bagh massacre spread, crowds took to streets in many towns in North India. There were strikes and clashes with police and attacks on government buildings. The government responded with brutal repression. Innocent people were humiliated and terrorised. People were flogged and villages were burnt for no reason. The national leaders were shocked at this inhumane treatment with fellow Indians and pledged to protest. Mahatma Gandhi now felt the need to launch a more broad-based movement in India. Khilafat and Non-Cooperation Movements were started after a few months. The main aim of these movements was to protest against Jallianwala Bagh incident and demand swaraj.

40. Describe the developments which led to the launching of Non-Cooperation Movement.

Answer: The developments that led to the launching of Non-Cooperation Movements were as follows.

- In 1916, Gandhiji travelled to Champaran in Bihar to inspire peasants to struggle against the oppressive plantation system.
- In 1917, he organised satyagraha to support the peasants of Kheda in Gujarat.
- In 1918, he organised satyagraha for cotton mill workers in Ahmedabad.
- In 1919, nationwide satyagraha was launched against Rowlatt Act.
- Passing of the Rowlatt Act leading to unrest among Indians and arrest of prominent leaders made Gandhiji launch the Non-Cooperation Movement.

41. Describe the significance of the Civil Disobedience Movement in the freedom Struggle of India.

Answer: The Civil Disobedience Movement was unique and significant in many ways.

- Unlike the Non-Cooperation Movement, the satyagrahis in the movement broke various colonial laws.
- This was a more successful and widespread mass movement. Thousands of people in different parts of the country broke salt law, manufactured salt and demonstrated in front of government offices and factories.
- The peasants refused to pay revenue and chaukidari taxes. Officials in villages resigned and forest people violated forest laws.

- In this movement, the satyagrahis displayed immense courage and sincerity. Despite the oppression of colonial government, they did not resort to violence and bravely courted arrests. All Congress leaders were arrested but this could not break the morale of the people.
- Another significant feature of the movement was the increased participation of women. Thousands of women came out of their comfortable life at home to participate in the mass movement. They demonstrated courage and determination, broke salt laws and manufactured salt, picketed shops selling foreign goods and organised various other activities. In the Civil Disobedience Movement, the business and industrial class also supported the national leaders by financial assistance and participated in Khadi movement.

42. How could non-cooperation become a movement? Explain with examples.

Answer: Most of the movements are issue-specific movements that seek to achieve a single objective within a limited time frame. The main issue was to support Khilafat, as well as swaraj. Gandhiji proposed that the movement should start in stages. It should begin with the surrender of titles, boycott of civil services, army, police courts and legislative councils, schools and foreign goods. The Non-cooperation Khilafat Movement began in January 1921. The movement started with middle class participation in the cities. Thousands of students left schools and colleges, lawyers gave up their practice. Council elections were boycotted in most provinces. Non-Cooperation had all the characteristics of a movement.

- It had a specific issue i.e. it was started in support of Khilafat and Swaraj.
- It could not achieve its direct objective. However, it was very successful on the economic front. The import of foreign cloth halved between 1921-1922 and its value dropped from 102 crore to 57 crore.
- It was short lived. Gandhiji called a halt to the Non-Cooperation Movement after the Chauri-Chaura incident when police station was set on fire in 1922.
- Non-Cooperation also had a clear cut leadership. It was organised under the leadership of Gandhiji.

43. How did different social groups conceive the idea of Non-cooperation? Explain with examples.

Answer:

- In Awadh, peasants were led by Baba Ramchandra, a sanyasi who had earlier been to Fiji as indentured labourer. Here, the movement was against talukdars and landlords who demanded very high rents, and cesses from the peasants. They had to perform beggar in landlords farms. They had no right over leased land. When the Non-Cooperation Movement started, the houses of talukdars and landlords were looted. In many place local leaders told the peasants that Gandhiji had said no taxes were to be paid and land was to be redistributed among the peasants.
- Tribal peasants of Andhra Pradesh interpreted the message of Gandhiji in a different way. They were led by Alluri Sitaram Raju. The government had closed large forest areas, preventing the tribals from entering forest to gaze their cattle. They were dependent on forests for food, fuel and trails. The militant movement had begun to resist repressive measures of the colonisers. The tribals became violent and attacked police stations.
- For plantation workers in Assam, Swaraj had a very different notion. For them freedom meant to move in and out of the confined place. The workers believed that Gandhi raj was coming and everyone would be given land in their village. So, they defied the authorities, left the plantations and headed home.

44. Explain the impact of Jallianwallah Bagh incident on the people.

Answer:

- As the news of the Jallianwallah Bagh spread, the crowds took to streets in many towns of North India.
- There were strikes, clashes with the police and attack on government buildings.

- The government reciprocated with brutal repression to terrorise the people.
- Satyagrahis were forced to rub their noses on the ground, crawl on the streets and do salaam to all officers.
- People were flogged and villages around Gujranwala in Punjab (now in Pakistan) were bombed.

45. Explain the effects of Non-Cooperation Movement on the economic front.

Answer: The effects of the Non-cooperation Movement on the economic front were

- The import of foreign cloth halved between 1921 and 1922 and its value dropped from 102 crores to 57 crores.
- Foreign goods were boycotted, liquor shops picketed and foreign cloth burnt in huge bonfires.
- In many places traders and merchants refused to trade in foreign goods or finance foreign goods.
- As the boycott movement spread people refused to wear imported clothes and wore only Indian ones.
- Production of Indian textiles and handlooms went up.

46. How did peasants of Awadh used different methods to achieve their goal? Explain.

Answer:

The peasants of Awadh were led by Baba Ramchandra. The following methods were used to achieve their goals:

- They raised their demand for reduction of revenue, abolition of begar and security of land tenure. They took to social boycott of oppressive landlords.
- In many places, the panchayats organised nai-dhobi bands to deprive the landlords of basic services of barber and washermen.
- Oudh Kisan Sabha was set up with more than 300 branches in the villages around Awadh.

47. ‘Dalit participation was limited in the Civil Disobedience Movement’. Examine the statement.

Answer:

- Dalit participation was limited in Civil Disobedience Movement because the Congress did not want to offend to ‘Sanatanis’ the upper caste Hindus by including the Dalits.
- The dalits believed that political empowerment would solve all the problems , of their social disabilities.
- Many dalit leaders were keen on a different political solution to their problems. They organised themselves and demanded reserved seats in educational institutions and separate electorate that would choose dalit members for councils.
- Ambedkar had clashed with Gandhiji at Second Round Table Conference for demanding separate electorate for dalits. Gandhiji viewed this as slowing down the process of unity and their integration into society.
- The dalits continued to be apprehensive of Congress led movements because it was dominated by conservative high class Hindus. So the dalit participation in the Civil Disobedience Movement was limited, particularly in Maharashtra and Nagpur region where their organisation was strong.

48. Why did Gandhiji start the ‘Civil Disobedience Movement’? Explain any four features of Civil Disobedience Movement.

Answer: Gandhiji started the Civil Disobedience Movement. On 31 January 1930, he sent a letter to Viceroy Irwin, stating eleven demands. The most stirring demand was to abolish salt tax. Salt is the commodity consumed by all, both rich and poor. It is one of the most essential item of food. The tax on salt and its monopoly over production revealed the oppressive face of British government. Mahatma Gandhi started his historic march from Sabarmati Ashram. On 6 April, he reached Dandi and violated the law, manufacturing salt by boiling sea water. This was the

beginning of the Civil Disobedience Movement. Main features of the Civil Disobedience Movement are:

- First successful mass movement.
- People from all sections participated in the Movement.
- Women for the first time left their homes and joined the movement.
- For the first time the movement was launched with the goal of Purna Swaraj.

49. How did the people and the colonial government react to the Civil Disobedience Movement? Explain.

Answer: The people reacted differently to the Civil Disobedience Movement.

- Thousands of people broke colonial laws and salt laws, manufactured salt and demonstrated in front of government owned salt factories.
- Foreign cloth was boycotted, liquor shops were picketed. Peasants refused to pay taxes, revenue and chowkidari taxes. In many places people violated forest laws, going into reserved forests to collect wood and graze cattle.
- In Peshwar, the angry crowd demonstrated in streets, facing armoured cars and police firing.
- The colonial government reacted ruthlessly. Worked by the popularity of the movement, the government arrested eminent leaders. It led to violent clashes.
- Peaceful satyagrahis were arrested, people were beaten and 1,00,000 were arrested. Congress was declared illegal. Gandhiji signed the Gandhi-Irwin Pact and agreed to attend the Second Round Table Conference in London.

50. Explain the reactions of the Indian people against the Rowlatt Act passed through the Imperial Legislative Council in 1919.

Answer: The Rowlatt Act gave enormous powers to the government to repress political activities and allowed detention of political prisoners without trial for two years.

- Indians reacted against this unreasonable act, Gandhiji wanted a non-violent civil disobedience against the unjust law and decided to start a hartal on 6th April 1919.
- Rallies were organised in various cities.
- People organised hartals all over the country in protest of the Rowlatt Act and the shops were shut down.
- Workers went on strike in railway workshops.

51. Who was Alluri Sitaram Raju? Explain his role in inspiring the rebels with Gandhiji's ideas.

Answer: Alluri Sitaram Raju led the peasant rebellion in the Gudem Hills of Andhra Pradesh. He became popular because he claimed that he had special powers of astrological predictions and the power to heal people. He could survive bullet shots. In Gudem Hills of Andhra Pradesh, a militant guerrilla movement spread in early 1920s. The main aim of the movement was to protest against colonial laws. The government had closed forest areas for grazing of cattle and collection of firewood or fruits. Government compelled them to work free for road building (begar). The people revolted under Alluri Sitaram Raju. He spoke about the greatness of Gandhiji and he was inspired by Non-Cooperation Movement. The people were persuaded to wear Khadi and give up drinking alcohol. He believed India will become independent by force and not by non-violence. The Gudem rebels attacked police stations and attempted to kill British officials.

52. Describe the actions taken by the British administration against the nationalists who opposed the Act.

Answer: The following steps were taken by British administration against the nationalists who opposed the Act.

- The British administrators decided to clamp down upon the nationalists because they feared that lines of communication such as railways and telegraphs would be disrupted. They adopted the following methods.

- Local leaders were picked from Amritsar.
- Mahatma Gandhi was barred from entering Delhi.
- On 10 April police fired upon peaceful, procession which led to widespread attacks on banks, post offices and railways stations.
- Martial law was imposed. General Dyer took charge in Amritsar.

53. Explain the role played by tribal peasants in the Gudem Hills of Andhra Pradesh during the Non Cooperation Movement.

Answer: The tribal peasants of Gudem Hills of Andhra Pradesh understood the message of Gandhiji and idea of Swaraj in a different way. In Gudem Hills, as in other parts, the tribal peasants were prevented from entering the forest areas, to graze their cattle or to collect fuelwood and fruits. They were also forced to do beggar. A militant guerrilla movement had spread in the 1920s. The tribal peasants were deprived of their livelihood and their traditional rights were denied. The person who led them was Alluri Sitaram Raju. He was inspired by Gandhiji, persuaded people to wear khadi and give up drinking. He also believed India will become free with the use of force and not non-violence. People attacked police stations, attempted to kill British officials and carried out guerrilla warfare.

54. Examine the role of industrial working class in the Civil Disobedience Movement.

Answer:

- When the Civil Disobedience Movement started, the industrial working class did not participate in large number except in the Nagpur region.
- As the industrialists gave financial assistance and came closer to the Congress, . the workers did not participate in large number.
- Some workers did participate in the movement. They boycotted foreign goods. They asked for higher wages and better working conditions. They participated in protest rallies and boycott campaigns in Chotanagpur region.
- Gandhiji did not support the demands of industrial workers as it would have alienated the business classes.
- Gandhiji was reluctant to support the industrial working class as it would have divided the anti-imperialist forces.

55. How did Gandhiji try to integrate the Depressed Classes into society? Explain any three points.

Answer: Gandhiji tried to integrate the Depressed Classes into society in the following ways:

- He organised Satyagraha to secure entry into temples for them and access to public wells, tanks, roads and schools.
- He himself cleaned toilets to dignify the work of the untouchables.
- He persuaded the upper classes to change their attitude towards the depressed classes and give up untouchability.
- When the British conceded to demand of Dr BR Ambedkar to have separate electorates for the depressed classes, Gandhiji went on a fast unto death as he believed that a separate electorate for Dalits would slow down the process of their integration into society.

56. How did BR Ambedkar try to improve the conditions of the Depressed Classes? Explain any three points.

Answer:

BR Ambedkar tried to improve the conditions of the Depressed Classes in the following ways:

- In 1930, Dr. BR Ambedkar organised the Dalits (the untouchables) into an organisation called the Depressed Classes Association, now known as scheduled caste.
- His ideas regarding depressed class deferred from that of Mahatma Gandhi. He wanted separate electorates for Dalits.

- Whilst at Round Table Conference in London he demanded separate electorates for Dalits and the British coloniser conceded his demand. This caused Mahatma Gandhi to fast unto the death because he believed that separate electorate for the Dalits would slow down the process of their integration into the main society.
- He signed the Poona Pact with Gandhi ji and the Congress giving the opportunities to depress to secure reserved seat for Dalits in the provincial and Central Legislative Council to be voted in general election.

57. Explain any three causes that led the tribals to revolt in the Gudem Hills of Andhra Pradesh.

Answer: The tribal peasants of Gudem Hill in Andhra Pradesh fought for swaraj and revolted against the British. The following were the causes that led the tribals to the revolt in the Gudem Hills of Andhra Pradesh:

- The colonial government had closed large forest areas preventing the tribals from entering the forest to graze their cattle and felt that their traditional rights were being taken away.
- The tribal who were strongly dependent on the forests for food, fruits and fuel were prevented to carry out these activities affecting their livelihood which enraged them.
- The government was forcing the peasants of the Gudem Hill to carry out begar (unpaid work) for the building of roads.
- A militant movement had begun to resist the repressive measures of the colonisers. The tribals here became violent and attacked police station and attempted to kill the British.

58. Explain four points about Gandhiji's idea of 'satyagraha'.

Answer:

Gandhiji had carried out successful satyagraha in South Africa against the racist regime.

- According to him satyagraha was not a passive resistance but it called for intensive activity.
- It suggested that if the struggle was against injustice, physical force is not necessary to fight the oppressor. Non-violence could also win the battle.
- Only through the power of truth and non-violence, an appeal was made to the conscience of the oppressor.
- Persuasion, not force, would make the oppressor realise the truth. This dharma of non-violence and truth united people against the oppressor and made them realise the truth.

59. Why did the rich peasants take part in the Civil Disobedience Movement? Give four reasons.

Answer:

Among the different social groups which participated in the Civil Disobedience Movement the rich peasants also had their ideals and perceptions of Swaraj which encouraged them to join the movement.

- Rich peasants like Patidars of Gujarat and Jats in Uttar Pradesh who were producers of commercial crops were hard hit by depression and falling prices.
- As their cash income reduced, they were unable to pay government revenue.
- The government refused to reduce revenue. So, the rich peasants became enthusiastic supporters of the Civil Disobedience Movement to free them from the situation.

Map Questions

➤ Some features are marked on the given political outline map of India. Identify them with the help of the following information and write their correct names.

1. The place where the Indian National Congress session was held in 1927.
The place associated with peasants' Satyagraha

Or

The place where peasants struggled against the indigo plantation system.

Or

The place where the ‘Movement of Indigo planters’ was started.

2. The city associated with the Jallianwala Bagh incident.
3. The place where cotton mill workers organised Satyagraha in 1918.

Or

Name the place related to the Satyagraha of peasants in Gujarat.

4. The place related to the calling off the Non-Cooperation Movement.
5. The place where the Indian National Congress Session was held.

Or

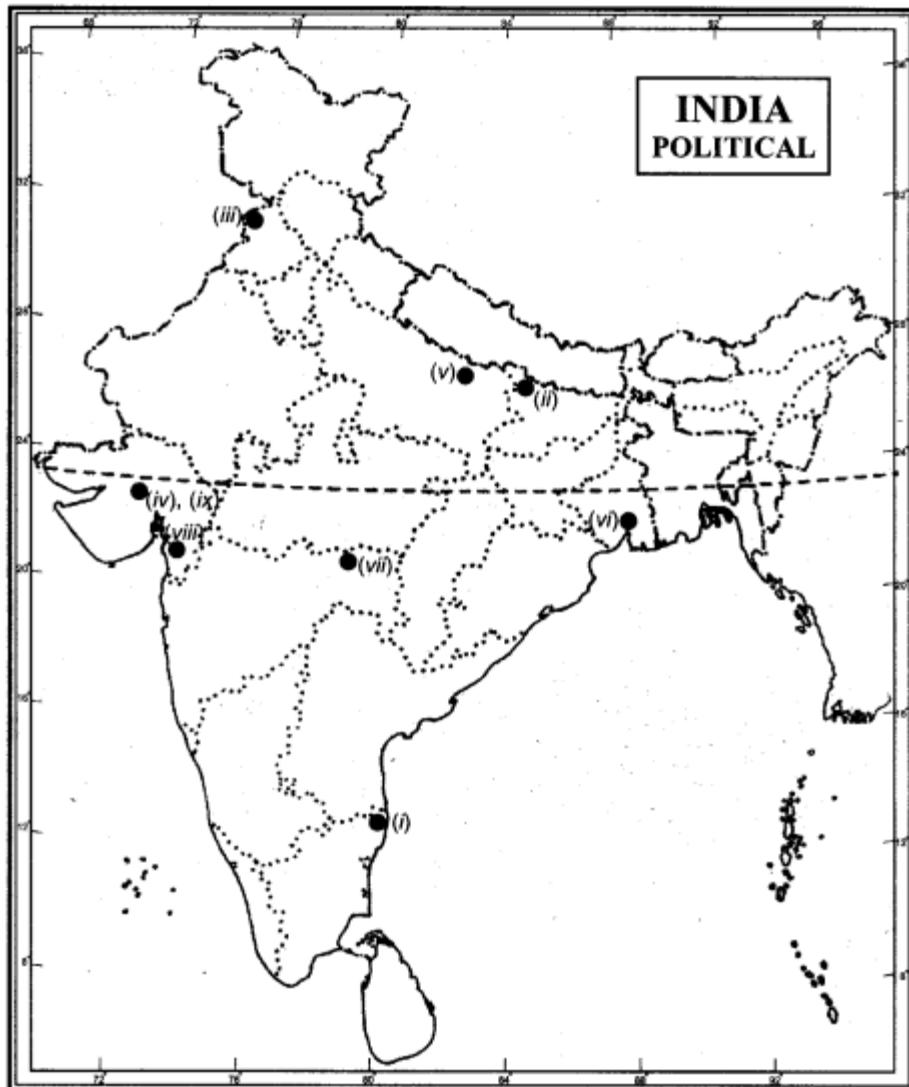
The place where the Indian National Congress Session was held in September 1920.

6. The place where the Indian National Congress Session was held in 1920.
7. The place where peasants organized a Satyagraha

Or

The place where ‘No Tax Campaign’ was started.

8. The place where the Civil Disobedience Movement was started.



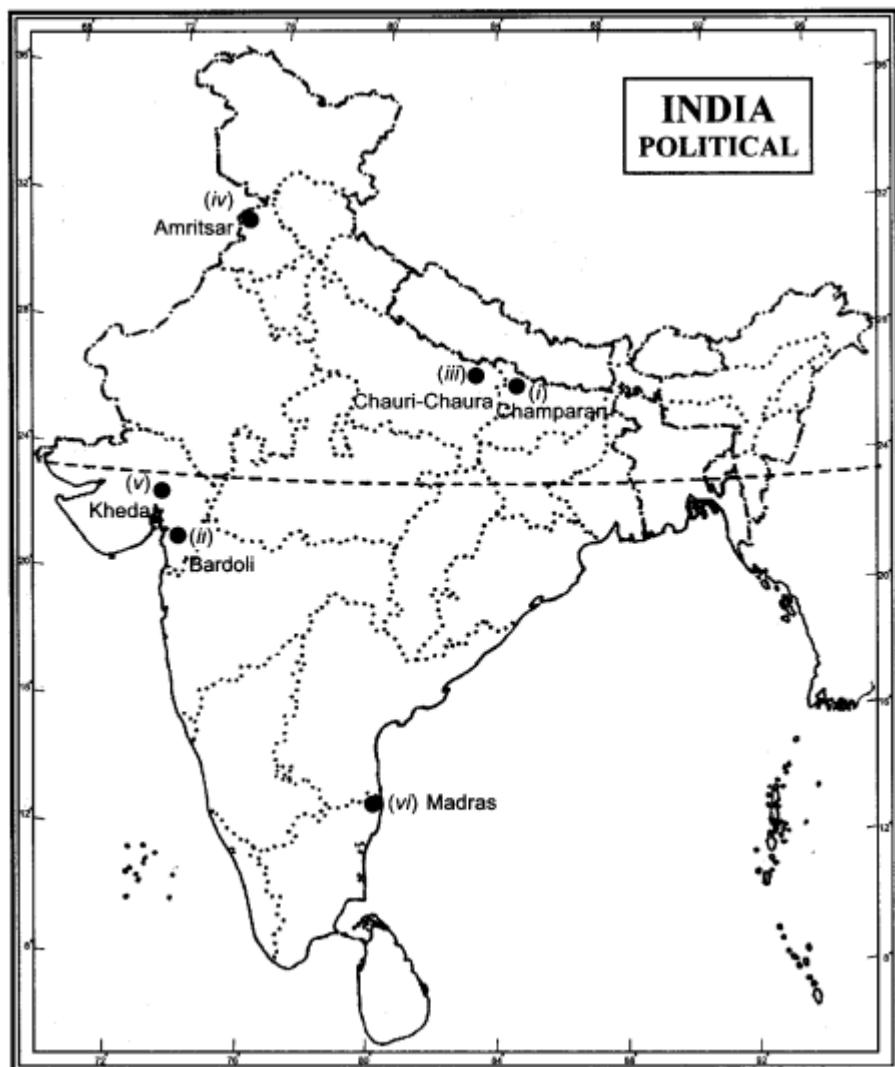
Answer:

1. Madras (Now Chennai)
2. Champaran (Bihar)
3. Amritsar
4. Ahmedabad
5. Chauri-Chaura (UP)
6. Calcutta (Kolkata)
7. Nagpur

8. Bardoli
9. Sabarmati Ashram (Gujarat)

➤ Locate and label the following with appropriate symbols on the given outline map of India.

- 1.Champaran-The place, from where the movement of Indigo planters was Started.
- 2.Bardoli-The place from where 'No Tax Campaign' was started.
- 3.Chauri-Chaura-The place of calling off Non-Cooperation Movement.
- 4.Amritsar-The place where Jallian wala Bagh incident took place.
- 5.Kheda-The place where the peasants Satyagraha was held.
- 6.Madras-The place where, the Indian National Congress Session of 1927 was held.



THE MAKING OF A GLOBAL WORLD

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [1 MARKS]

1. Who discovered the continent of America?

Answer:

America was discovered by Christopher Columbus.

2. Which European country first conquered America?

Answer:

The Spanish first conquered America.

3. Which powerful weapon was used by Spanish to conquer America?

Answer:

Germs of smallpox were used by the Spanish to conquer America.

4. Name two countries which were world's richest countries till the 18th century.

Answer:

India and China.

5. What were Corn Laws?

Answer:

Under pressure from the landed groups, government restricted the import of corn. The laws allowing the government to do this are known as Corn Laws.

6. How was the transport of perishable foods possible over long distances?

Answer:

Refrigerated ships, enabled the transport of perishable food over long distances.

7. Why did the big European powers meet in Berlin in 1885?

Answer:

In 1885 the big European powers met at Berlin to complete the division of Africa among themselves.

8. What was rinderpest? When did it arrive in Africa?

Answer:

Rinderpest was a kind of cattle plague. It arrived in Africa in 1890s.

9. What is indentured labour?

Answer:

It is a bonded labour who had agreed under contract to work for an employer for a specific period and to pay his passage to a new country or home.

10. What were the main destinations of Indian indentured migrants?

Answer:

Indentured Indian migrants were taken to Caribbean islands (mainly Trinidad, Guyana and Surinam) Mauritius and Fiji.

11. What was 'Hosay'?

Answer:

The Muharram procession in Trinidad turned into a riotous carnival called Hosay (for Imam Hussain). It took place annually. Workers of all races and religions joined the procession.

12. Who popularised Rastafarianism?**Answer:**

Rastafarianism was made famous by the Jamaican reggae star Bob Marley. It reflected cultural links with India.

13. What was Chutney music?**Answer:**

Chutney music was popular in Trinidad and Guyana. It is an expression of post-indenture experience.

14. Name a Nobel Prize winning writer who is a descendant of indentured labour from India?**Answer:**

V. S. Naipaul.

15. Which West-Indies cricketers trace their roots to indentured labour migrants from India?**Answer:**

Ramnaresh Sarwan and Shivnarine Chanderpaul.

16. Who were 'Coolies'?**Answer:**

Descendants of Indian indentured labourers were often referred to as coolies in Trinidad.

17. What is meant by trade surplus?**Answer:**

Trade surplus means higher value of exports than the value of imports.

18. Who were the 'Allies' during the First World War?**Answer:**

During the First World War the Allies were Britain, France and Russia. They were, later joined by the United States.

19. Which country was not a member of the Central Powers?**Answer:** Japan.**20. Who adopted the concept of an assembly line to produce automobiles?****Answer:** Henry Ford.**21. Who made the best-cost cutting decision?****Answer:** Henry Ford.**22. What was the 'hire purchase' system?****Answer:**

Hire purchase system means purchase on credit, repaid in weekly or monthly instalments.

23. Name the countries who were members of Axis Powers.**Answer:**

The Axis Powers consisted of Nazi Germany, Italy and Japan.

24. Who were the Allies during the Second World War?**Answer:**

The Allies consisted of Britain, France, the Soviet Union and the US during the Second World War.

25. Which institution was established in the Bretton Woods Conference?

Answer:

International Monetary Fund.

26. What was the Bretton Woods System?

Answer:

It was post-war international economic system.

27. What is referred to as the ‘Bretton Woods twins’?

Answer:

The IMF and the World Bank.

28. What is G-77?

Answer:

G-77 is a group of developing countries.

29. Define fixed exchange rates.

Answer:

When exchange rates are fixed and the government intervenes to prevent movement.

30. How were cowries used in the ancient period?

Answer:

Cowries or seashells were used as a form of currency.

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [3 MARKS]

31. What lessons were learnt from inter-war economic experiences by the economists and politicians during the Second World War? Describe.

Answer:

Economists and politicians learnt two key lessons from inter-war economic experiences during the Second World War:

- An industrial society based on mass production cannot be sustained without mass consumption. But to ensure mass consumption, there was a need for high and stable incomes. Income could be stable if employment was stable. So stable incomes and employment were needed.
- Markets could not guarantee full employment. Therefore, Government would need to check fluctuations of prices and provision of employment. Economic stability can be ensured with the interference of the Government.
- The second lesson was a country’s economic links with the outside world. The goal of full employment could only be achieved if Government had power to control flow of goods, capital and labour.

32. What role did the ‘Silk route’ play in linking distant parts of the world?

OR

“The silk routes are a good example of vibrant pre-modem trade and cultural links between distant parts of the world.” Explain how.

Answer:

The routes on which cargoes carried Chinese silk to the west were known as ‘Silk routes’.

(i) Historians have discovered several silk routes over land and by sea, covering vast regions of Asia and connecting Asia with Europe and North Africa. Even pottery from China, textile and spices from India and South Asia also travelled the same route.

(ii) In return, precious metals like gold and silver flowed from Europe to Asia. The traders along with trading items carried knowledge, ideas, values, skills, inventions, lifestyles, food habits, religious beliefs, etc.

(iii) Culturally, Buddhism emerged from Eastern India and spread in several directions through the silk routes. Thus, silk route not only played a major role in linking distant parts of the world, but also promoted pre-modern trade and cultural links.

33. “The new crops could make the difference between life and death”. Explain the above statement in context of Irish Potato Famine.

Answer:

Sometimes the new crops could make the difference between life and death.

- Europe's poor began to eat better and live longer with the introduction of the humble potato.
- Ireland's poorest peasants became so dependent on the potatoes that when disease destroyed the potato crop in the mid-1840s, hundreds of thousands died of starvation.
- Hungry children dug for potatoes in a field that had already been harvested, hoping to discover some leftovers.
- During the Great Irish Potato Famine around ten lakh people died of starvation in Ireland and double the number emigrated in search of work.

34. ‘Many a times introduction of new crops make the difference between life and death/ Explain the statement with the example of introduction of potato crop in Europe.

Answer:

- Foods such as potato which were unknown before were only introduced in Europe and Asia after Christopher Columbus accidentally discovered the vast continent known as the Americas.
- Sometimes the new crops like potato could make the difference between life and death. It was with the introduction of the humble potato that Europe's poor began to eat well, eat better and live longer.
- Ireland's poor peasants became so dependent on potatoes that when the potato crop was destroyed by disease in the mid-1840s, hundreds of thousands of peasants died of starvation.

35. What were the IMF and the World Bank designed for? What made them shift their attention towards developing countries?

Answer:

The IMF and the World Bank were designed to meet the financial requirements of industrial countries. They were known as the Bretton Woods Twins. They were not equipped to deal with the challenges of poverty and lack of development in the former colonies. Fortunately, Europe and Japan rapidly rebuilt their economies and grew less dependent on the IMF and the World Bank.

As a result, IMF and the World Bank began to shift their attention more towards developing countries. The major challenge before the newly independent and developing countries was to help the majority of the people to come out of the severe poverty. Even after many years of decolonisation, the former colonial powers still controlled vital resources such as minerals and land in some of their colonies. Even the US also often enjoyed the rights to exploit natural resources of the developing countries very cheaply.

The formation of the group of 77 developing countries (G-77) helped these countries to demand a New International Economic Order (NIEO) that would give them real control over their natural resources, more development assistance, fairer prices for raw materials and better access for their manufactured goods in developed countries' markets.

36. What steps were taken by economists and politicians of the world to meet the global economic crisis that arose after World War II?

Answer:

The Second World War caused an immense amount of economic devastation and social disruption. To preserve economic stability and full employment in the industrial world a Conference was held in 1944 at Bretton Woods, USA. The Bretton Woods Conference established the International Monetary Fund (IMF) and International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (Popularly known as World Bank) to deal with external surpluses and deficits of its member nations and to finance post-war reconstruction.

The post-war international economic system is also often described as the Bretton Woods System. The Bretton Woods System was based on fixed exchange rates. In this system, national currencies were pledged to the dollar at a fixed exchange rate. The dollar itself was anchored to gold at a fixed price of \$35 per ounce of gold.

The IMF and the World Bank were designed to meet the financial needs of the industrial countries. But as Europe and Japan rapidly rebuilt their economies, they grew less dependent on the IMF and the World Bank. Thus from the late 1950s the Bretton Woods institutions began to shift their attention more towards developing countries. The developing countries which were former colonies came under the guidance of international agencies dominated by the former colonial powers.

37. Explain the causes of the Great Depression in the US between 1929-30.

Answer:

There were several factors that had caused the ‘Depression’. Some of those were as follows:

(i) Agricultural Overproduction. Agricultural overproduction remained a problem. Falling of agricultural prices had made it even worse. As the prices fell, the agricultural income declined. To meet this situation, farmers brought larger volume of produce to the market to maintain their small income. The excessive supply couldn’t be sold due to lack of buyers and farm produce rotted.

(ii) US Loan Crisis. In the mid-1920s, many countries financed their investments through loans from the US. The overseas lenders panicked at the first sign of trouble. Countries that depended crucially on US loans faced an acute crisis due to the withdrawal of US loans. It led to the failure of major banks and collapse of currencies such as the British pound sterling. In Latin America and elsewhere, it intensified the decline of agricultural and raw material prices. By doubling import duties, US gave another severe blow to world trade.

38. Describe the effect of the Great Depression on the world? Who were the worst affected by this depression?

Answer:

The Great Depression began around 1929 and lasted till the mid-1930s. During this period, there were catastrophic declines in production, employment, incomes and trade. Agricultural regions and communities were worst affected due to the great fall of agricultural prices.

In the US, farmers could not sell their harvests, households were ruined and businesses collapsed. Many households in the US could not repay their loans due to fall in their income and were forced to give up their homes, cars and other consumer durables. Unemployment increased rapidly and people had to travel long distances in search of work.

The Great Depression’s wider effects on society, politics and international relations and on peoples needs proved more enduring. The Depression immediately affected Indian trade. India’s exports and imports halved between 1928 and 1934.

Peasants and farmers suffered more than urban dwellers. Though agricultural prices fell sharply, the colonial government refused to reduce revenue demands. Peasants producing for the world market were the worst hit. Across India, peasants indebtedness increased.

39. “The relocation of industry to low-wage countries stimulated world trade and capital flows.” Justify the statement.

Answer:

The industrial world was hit by unemployment that began rising from the mid 1970s and remained till 1990s. From the late 1970s, MNCs began to shift production operations to low-wage Asian countries. New Economic policies in China and collapse of the Soviet Union and communication in Eastern Europe brought many countries back into the world economy.

Wages were relatively low in countries like China. They became attractive destinations for investments by foreign MNCs competing to capture world market.

Thus the relocation of industry to low-wage countries stimulated world trade and capital flow.

40. Why did the developing countries organize the G-77? Give three reasons.

Answer:

(i) The formation of the G-77 was a response to certain changes in the international financial system proposed by the Bretton Woods Conference. The IMF and the World Bank (Bretton Woods Twins) were designed to meet the financial requirements of industrial countries. Although there was unprecedented growth in the West and Japan, nothing was done about the poverty and lack of development in the countries which were earlier colonies.

(ii) The developing countries did not benefit from the fast growth the western economies experienced under the guidance of the World Bank and the IMF. Thus, there arose a need for the developing nations to organise themselves into the G-77 group to demand a New International Economic Order.

(iii) The formation of the New International Economic Order (NIEO) meant a system that would give them real control over their natural resources, more development assistance, fairer prices for raw materials and better access for their manufactured goods in developed countries' markets.

41. “The pre-modem world changed with the discovery of new sea routes to America. “Give any three suitable examples to explain the statement.

Answer:

Christopher Columbus discovered the vast continent that later came to be known as America. With the discovery of America, started the cultural exchange with the original inhabitants of a vast continent.

- Foods like potatoes, maize, tomatoes, chillies, sweet potatoes, which were not known to people of other continents, were introduced there and became a part of their daily diet.
- Precious metals, particularly silver from mines located in present-day Peru and Mexico, also enhanced Europe's wealth and financed its trade with Asia.
- Slave trade started. European traders captured slaves in Africa and took them to America, where they worked on plantations. Europe became the centre of World trade.
- Religious dissenters were persecuted in Europe. Thousands, therefore fled Europe for America.
- From the sixteenth century, America's vast lands and abundant crops and minerals began to transform trade and lives everywhere.

42. ‘Trade flourished and markets expanded in the late 19th century, but there was a darker side to this process’. Substantiate.

Answer:

- Trade flourished and market expanded in the late 19th century. But this was not only a period of expanding trade and increased property (wealth). There was a darker side to this process.
- In many parts of the world, the expansion of trade and a close relationship with the world economy also meant a loss of freedom and livelihoods.

- Late 19th century European conquests produced many painful economic, social and ecological changes through which colonised societies were brought into the world economy.
- In Africa in the 1890s a fast spreading disease of cattle plague or rinderpest had a terrifying impact on peoples livelihoods and local economy.
- The example of indentured labour migration from the colonies also shows the two-sided nature of the 19th century world. A world of economic growth as well as misery, higher incomes for some and poverty for others, technological advances along with new forms of coercion.

43. Explain the impact of the First World War on Britain's economy.

Answer:

Britain, world's leading economy in the pre-war period, faced a prolonged crisis:

- To finance war expenditure, Britain had borrowed liberally from US. This meant that at the end of the war, Britain was burdened with huge external debts.
- The war had disturbed Britain's position of dominance in the Indian market. In India, the Nationalist Movement had gathered strength and anti-British feeling had become stronger among common people. Promotion of Indian industries had become one of the objectives of the Nationalist leaders, which adversely affected industries in Britain.
- There was widespread increase in unemployment coupled with decrease in agricultural and industrial production. Cotton production collapsed and export of cotton from Britain fell dramatically.
- Unable to modernize, Britain was finding it difficult to compete with U.S., Germany and Japan internationally.

44. What attracted the Europeans to Africa? Give any three reasons.

Answer:

- In the late 19th century, Europeans were attracted to Africa due to its vast resources of land and minerals.
- Europeans came to Africa hoping to establish plantations and mines to produce crops and minerals which they could export to Europe.
- The loss of cattle disease destroyed African livelihoods. Planters, mine owners and colonial governments now successfully monopolised what scarce cattle resources remained to force Africans into the labour market.
- African countries were militarily weak and backward. So they were in no position to resist military aggression by European states. Thus it was easy for European states to conquer them and establish colonies.

45. Describe the effect of the Great Depression on the world? Who were the worst affected by this depression?

Answer:

The Great Depression began around 1929 and lasted till the mid-1930s. During this period, there were catastrophic declines in production, employment, incomes and trade. Agricultural regions and communities were worst affected due to the great fall of agricultural prices.

In the US, farmers could not sell their harvests, households were ruined and businesses collapsed. Many households in the US could not repay their loans due to fall in their income and were forced to give up their homes, cars and other consumer durables. Unemployment increased rapidly and people had to travel long distances in search of work.

The Great Depression's wider effects on society, politics and international relations and on peoples needs proved more enduring. The Depression immediately affected Indian trade. Indian exports and imports halved between 1928 and 1934.

Peasants and farmers suffered more than urban dwellers. Though agricultural prices fell sharply, the colonial government refused to reduce revenue demands. Peasants producing for the world market were the worst hit. Across India, peasants indebtedness increased.

46. “The new crops could make the difference between life and death”. Explain the above statement in context of Irish Potato Famine.

Answer:

Sometimes the new crops could make the difference between life and death.

Europe's poor began to eat better and live longer with the introduction of the humble potato.

Ireland's poorest peasants became so dependent on the potatoes that when disease destroyed the potato crop in the mid-1840s, hundreds of thousands died of starvation.

Hungry children dug for potatoes in a field that had already been harvested, hoping to discover some leftovers.

During the Great Irish Potato Famine, around ten lakh people died of starvation in Ireland and double the number emigrated in search of work.

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [5 MARKS]

47. What are indentured labourers? How were they recruited? Explain the condition of the indentured labourers who went to work in different parts of the world.

Answer:

Indentured labour was a practice introduced by the British in the nineteenth century. Indentured labour refers to bonded labour under contract. The labourer works for an employer for a specified period of time. In the 19th century hundreds of thousands of Indian and Chinese labourers went to work on plantations, in mines and in road and railway construction projects around the world.

- In India, indentured labour were hired under contracts which promised return travel to India after they had worked five years on their employers' plantations.
- Recruitment was done by agents employed by the plantation owners and paid a small commission.
- Agents also sometimes tempted these migrants by providing false information regarding their destinations, modes of travel, the nature of work and living and working conditions. Sometimes agents even forcibly abducted less willing workers.

Condition of Indentured Labour. Many migrants agreed to take up work to escape poverty and oppression in their home villages.

- On arrival at the plantations labourers found conditions to be different from what they had imagined. Living and working conditions were hard and there were very few legal rights.
- But workers discovered their own ways of surviving. Many of them escaped into the wilds, though if caught they would face severe punishment.
- Others developed new forms of individual and collective self expression, blending different cultural forms. In Trinidad, the annual Muharram procession was transformed into a riotous carnival called 'Hosay', in which workers of all races and religions joined. The protest religion 'Rastafarianism' and 'Chutney Music' popular in the Caribbean both were developed post the indenture experience.

Most indentured labour gradually found that their economic and social positions were not inferior to but often better off than their own country.

48. Describe the factors that led to the end of the Bretton Woods system and the beginning of Globalisation.

Answer:

Most of the developing countries could not benefit from the fast growth of western economies. Therefore, they organised themselves as a group of 77 (G-77) and demanded a New International

Economic Order (NIEO). NIEO meant a system that would give them control over their own natural resources, more development assistance, fairer prices for raw materials and better access for their manufactured goods in developed markets.

From the mid-1970s, the international financial system changed in an important way. Developing countries could no longer turn to international institutions for loans.

They were now forced to borrow from western commercial banks and private lending institutions. This led to debt crisis in the developing world.

The industrial world was also hit by unemployment and MNCs began to shift production operations to low wage Asian countries. Countries like China became attractive destinations for investment by foreign MNCs competing to capture the world market. This stimulated world trade and capital flows and led to the beginning of globalisation.

49. Why have the historians described the 19th century indenture as a ‘new system of slavery’? Explain any five reasons.

Answer:

Indentured labour is a bonded labourer under contract to work for an employer for a specific amount of time, to pay for his passage to a new country or home.

Reasons why it can be described as new system of slavery:

- Many migrants agreed to take up work to escape poverty and oppression in their home villages. They were cheated and were provided false information by the agents regarding their destination, modes of travel, the nature of work and working conditions.
- Often migrants were not even told that they were to go on long sea journeys and sometimes agents forcibly abducted less willing workers.
- The tasks allotted to them on plantations were extremely heavy and could not be completed in a day. They were beaten or imprisoned for not being able to meet tasks.
- Deductions were made from wages if the work was considered unsatisfactory or if they failed to complete a job.
- Living and working conditions were harsh and there were few legal rights to protect the workers.

50. Describe any five effects of the abolition of ‘Corn Laws’ in Britain.

Answer:

With the population growth and the expansion of urban sector and industry the demand for agricultural products went up, pushing up prices of food grain. Under pressure from landed groups, the Government also restricted the import of com. The laws allowing the Government to do this were commonly known as Com Laws. Unhappy with high food prices, the industrialists and urban dwellers forced the abolition of Com Laws.

Effect: Abolition of Corn Laws allowed the merchants in England to import foodgrains from abroad at lower costs.

The major effects of this were:

- It led to widespread unemployment in the agricultural sector, but prosperity in the industrial sector.
- It also resulted in the rise of a prosperous capitalist class in the urban areas.
- Another immediate effect that was noticed was that unemployment in the rural sector forced the movement of labour from agricultural to industrial sector.
- Migration of agricultural labourers to industrial sectors led to the growth of population in the urban areas.

51. How were the working conditions for the indentured migrants overseas? How did the different cultural form blend into new forms?

Answer:

On arrival at the plantations, the indentured labour found extremely horrible and miserable living and working conditions. Working hours were very long and labourers had few legal rights.

The indentured labour in the Caribbean islands gave rise to new forms of individual and collective self expression which blended different old and new cultural forms in the following ways.

- (a) In Trinidad, the annual Muharram procession was transformed into a riotous carnival called 'Hosay' (for Imam Hussain) in which workers of all races and religions joined.
- (b) Similarly, the protest religion of Rastafarianism made famous by the Jamaican reggae star Bob Marley is also said to reflect social and cultural links with Indian migrants to the Caribbean.
- (c) 'Chutney music', popular in Trinidad and Guyana, is another creative contemporary expression of the post-indenture experience.
- (d) These forms of cultural fusion are part of the making of the global world, where things from different places get mixed, lose their original characteristics and become something entirely new.

52. Describe the circumstances responsible for the formation of G-77.

Answer:

- (a) Most of the developing countries could not benefit from the fast economic growth which the western countries had experienced between 1950s and 1960s.
- (b) Many of the less developed regions of the world, were the colonies of Western countries. As newly independent countries, they had to develop economically, end poverty and start on a road to recovery.
- (c) In 1950s Bretton Woods institutions began to shift their attention to developing countries, but they were dominated by former colonial powers.
- (d) Even after many years of decolonization, the colonial powers controlled vital resources in their former colonies.

Therefore the developing countries organized themselves as a group— the group of 77 (G-77) to demand a new international economic order (NIEO). By NIEO, they meant better control over the country's resources, fair prices for raw materials and better access for their manufactured goods in developed countries markets.

.....

PRINT CULTURE AND THE MODERN WORLD

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [1 MARK]

1. Name the first edition of the Indian religious text published in vernacular.

Answer:

This first edition of the Indian religious text published in vernacular was the Ramcharitmanas of Tulsidas.

2. Name the oldest Japanese book.

Answer:

The oldest Japanese book, printed in 868 AD, is the Buddhist Diamond Sutra.

3. Name the Chinese traditional book, which was folded and stitched at the side.

Answer:

The Chinese traditional book, which was folded and stitched at the side, was known as accordion book.

4. Mention any one characteristic feature of the off-set press.

Answer:

One characteristic of the off-set press was that it could print up to six colours at a time.

5. Which place(city) had the breakthrough of first printing press?

Answer:

Strasbourg, Germany had the breakthrough of the first printing press.

6. Mention the technique adopted to educate white-collar workers in Europe during the 19th century.

Answer:

The technique of lending libraries was adopted to educate the white collar workers in Europe during the 19th century.

7. Mention any one technique of preserving the manuscript in India.

Answer:

The manuscripts in India were preserved by pressing them between wooden covers or being sewn together.

8. Who brought the print-culture to Japan?

Answer:

Buddhist missionaries from China introduced print culture into Japan around 768-770 AD.

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [3 MARKS]

9. How did print introduce debate and discussions? Explain any three points.

Answer:

Print introduced diverse reading material to masses, which they interpreted in their own way and developed their own thoughts. This gave rise to debate and discussion in the following ways.

- Varied opinions: People developed reasoning and hence began to debate on religious, social and economic issues. They developed different opinions. Social reformers offered a variety of interpretations of various beliefs and practices.

- Shaped opinions: Published matter not only spread new ideas and views but also shaped the nature of debate. A wider section of people could now participate in public discussion and express their views. New ideas emerged due to clash of opinions.
- Social reforms: This was a time of intense controversies between social and religious reformers and orthodoxy over social customs and polities. People began to reason and discuss critically the established social and religious norms. Samachar Chandrika opposed the opinions of Raja Rammohan Roy, which were published in Sambad Kaumudi in 1821.

10. Explain the effects of print culture in the religious sphere in early modern Europe.

Answer:

The following were the effects of print culture in the religious sphere in early modern Europe

- It was apprehended that easier access to the printed and wider circulation of books could pollute people's mind. People could turn rebellious and irreligious thoughts would spread.
- After reading the literature people developed the attitude towards reasoning, debate and discussion and began to challenge the existing norms of religion and society.
- Because of criticizing practices and rituals of Roman Catholic Church, there was a division in religion—Catholics and Protestants.
- Severe controls were imposed over publishers and booksellers for circulating heretical ideas.

11. Who invented the printing press? How did he develop the printing technology?

Answer:

Johann Gutenberg, a German goldsmith, is credited with the invention of printing press. Having spent most of his childhood on a large agricultural estate, Gutenberg saw wine and olive presses. By and large, he learnt the art of polishing stones and acquired expertise in creating lead moulds. Using this knowledge, he adopted the existing technology to design his innovation. The olive press became the base model for the printing press and moulds were used for casting metal types for alphabet. By 1448, he had perfected this system, which led to the development of printing technology.

12. Explain any three reasons which created a large number of new readers in the nineteenth century.

Answer:

The following were the three reasons which created a large number of new readers in the nineteenth century.

- Primary education became compulsory from the late-nineteenth century and it made children an important category of readers. Production of school textbooks became an imperative for the publishing industry.
- Reading and writing became popular among women. Penny magazines catered for women. There were manuals teaching proper behaviour and housekeeping which attracted women folk.
- Lending libraries in England became instruments for educating white-collar workers, artisans and lower-middle class people. Self-educated working class people wrote for themselves too.

13. What were the limitations of written manuscripts in India? Explain.

Answer:

The following were the limitations of written manuscripts in India.

- Manuscripts were very expensive and fragile. They had to be treated carefully and they were difficult to read as the script was written in different styles.
- Manuscripts were not widely used in everyday life of the common populace. Even though pre-colonial Bengal had developed a vast network of village primary schools, students usually did not read texts.

- Students only learnt to write. Teachers read out part of texts from memory and students wrote them down on paper. Students thus became literate without ever actually reading any kinds of texts.

14. Explain any three features of handwritten manuscripts before the age of print in India.

Answer:

The following were the three features of handwritten manuscripts before the age of print in India.

- Manuscripts were copied on palm leaves or on handmade paper.
- Pages were sometimes beautifully illustrated.
- They would be either pressed between wooden covers or sewn together to ensure preservation.
- Manuscripts, however, were highly expensive and fragile. They had to be handled carefully and could not be read easily as the script was written in different styles.
- They were written in different styles using vernacular language.

15. Examine the role of missionaries in the growth of press in India.

Answer:

The following points sum up the role of missionaries in the growth of press in India.

- The printing press first came to Goa with Portuguese missionaries in the mid-sixteenth century. Jesuit priests learnt Konkani and printed several tracts.
- By 1674, about 50 books had been printed in the Konkani and in Kanara languages. Catholic priests printed the first Tamil book in 1579 at Cochin and in 1713 the first Malayalam book was printed by them.
- By 1710, Dutch Protestant missionaries had printed 32 Tamil texts; many of them were translated from older works.

16. In what three ways did the printed books at first closely resemble the written manuscripts?

Answer:

The printed books closely resembled the written manuscripts in the following ways.

- Both printed books and manuscripts looked similar because metal letters imitated the ornamental handwritten style.
- Like written manuscripts, the borders of printed books were also illuminated by hand with foliage and patterns were painted.
- Both in written manuscripts and printed books, space for decoration was kept blank so that the buyer could choose their designs.

17. How did print bring the reading public and hearing public closer?

Answer:

Print brought the reading public and hearing public closer in the following ways.

- Printing reduced the cost of books and multiple copies could now be produced easily. Books flooded in the market and led to the increase of reading public.
- The literacy rate of Europeans was very low. Publishers reached out to people by making them listen to books being read out by a literate person. People gathered around the reader and listened.
- To keep the hearing public intact, publishers published popular ballads and folktales. Oral culture thus found route into print. Printed material was orally transmitted, which blurred the line separating reading and hearing public.

18. Describe woodblock printing.

Answer:

- Woodblock printing was a popular form of printing before the printing press was invented.
- Books were printed books in China as early as 594 AD by rubbing paper against the inked surface of woodblocks.

- Marco Polo brought this art to Europe, where it became very popular.
- By the fifteenth century, woodblock printing was being used extensively in making textiles, cards, etc.

19. What was Protestant Reformation?

Answer:

- Protestant Reformation was a movement dedicated to reform the Roman Catholic Church in the sixteenth century. Martin Luther was its chief preacher.
- He wrote Ninety Five Theses criticizing many of the practices and rituals of the Roman Catholic Church in 1517 in which he challenged the Church to debate his ideas.
- This led to division of church and beginning of the Protestant Reformation.

20. Why couldn't the production of handwritten manuscripts satisfy the ever increasing demand for books? Give any three reasons.

Answer:

The ever increasing demand for books could not be satisfied by the production of handwritten manuscripts because of the following reasons.

- Production of handwritten manuscripts was a tiresome work. Copying was time consuming, high priced and painful.
- Manuscripts were delicate and difficult to handle.
- It was not easy to carry the manuscripts everywhere.

21. Explain any three features of handwritten manuscripts before the age of print in India.only written content.

Answer:

The following were the features of the handwritten manuscripts before the age of print in India.

- They were very popular and were produced in various vernacular languages.
- They were produced on palm leaves or on handmade paper which were beautifully illustrated.
- They were pressed between wooden covers or sewn together so that they can be preserved for long.

22. Explain any three factors responsible for the invention of new printing techniques.

Answer:

Factors responsible for the development of print technology were as follows.

- The production of handwritten manuscripts could not satisfy the ever increasing demand for books.
- Copying was an expensive, laborious and time consuming exercise.
- Manuscripts were fragile, difficult to handle and could not be cared for or read easily.
- Wood-block printing was popular but there was a need for quicker and cheaper reproduction of texts.

23. How were magazines different from novels? Write any three differences.

Answer:

Magazines were different from the novels in the following ways.

- Magazines had several stories along with varied contents. Novels presented just one story.
- Magazines were published periodically but the novels were published only once.
- The writers of the magazines could be several. Novel was written by one author.
- Magazines contained advertisements as compared to novels.
- Magazines had written as well as pictorial representations while novels had.

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [5 MARKS]

24. "By the end of 19th century a new visual culture was taking shape." Explain.

Answer:

The nineteenth century saw the new visual culture taking shape. It was because of following developments.

- Along with the printed material, visual images could also be published and reproduced easily in multiple copies.
- Painters like Raja Ravi Varma used print culture to produce images for mass circulation. Wood improvers began to be employed in print houses for making woodblocks.
- People good at funny sketching developed cartoons and caricatures commenting on social and political issues. Some openly criticized imperial rule, western tastes and clothes which attracted large masses.
- Mass production of visual images reduced the cost of production. Cheap prints and calendars were available in market and even the poor could buy to decorate the walls of their homes.
- The new visual culture acquired distinctively Indian form and style, as artists began to depict scenes from Hindu religious mythology.

25. How did new form of popular literature appear in print targeting new audience in the 18th century? Explain with examples.

Answer:

New forms of popular literature like almanacs, newspapers and journals, appeared in print targeting new audiences in the eighteenth century in the following ways.

- Books could reach a wider population. Even those who disagreed with existing customers could express themselves through print.
- Journals carrying views of women writers explained why women should be educated.
- Novels carried themes related to women's life and emotions. Such journals were often written and edited by women themselves.
- With the expansion of compulsory education, children became important readers. A children's press was devoted for children literature alone. It published old fairy tales and folk tales along with new works. Grimm Brothers spent years compiling folk tales. All that was considered unsuitable was not included.
- Fictional narratives, poetic, autobiographies, anthologies and romantic plays were preferred by new readers.

26. How had the earliest printing technology developed in the world? Explain with examples.

Answer:

The following points show the development of the earliest printing technology in the world.

- The earliest kind of printing technology developed in China, Japan and Korea. This was a system of hand printing.
- From AD 594 onwards, books in China were printed by rubbing paper against the inked surface of woodblocks. As both sides of the thin, porous sheet could not be printed, the traditional Chinese accordion book was folded and stitched at the side.
- The imperial state in China was, for a very long time, the major producer of printed material. China possessed a huge bureaucratic system which recruited its personnel through civil services examination.
- Textbooks for this examination were printed in vast numbers under the sponsorship of the imperial state. From the sixteenth century, the number of examination candidates went up and that increased the volume of print.
- By the seventeenth century, as urban culture bloomed in China, the uses of print diversified.

27. Martin Luther remarked, ‘Printing is the ultimate gift of God and the greatest one.’

Explain his remarks in the light of religious reforms that took place in Europe.

Answer:

Religious reforms that took place in Europe were as follows.

- Martin Luther wrote Ninety Five Theses criticizing the practices and rituals of the Roman Catholic Church. These were reproduced in large numbers and read by a large number of people.
- This led to the division within the church into Catholics and Protestants.
- This print brought about a new intellectual atmosphere, which helped in the spread of new ideas. This also paved the way for the reformation in the practices of the church.
- The message in the Bible began to be reinterpreted.
- Print encouraged people to think reasonably and question the customs followed in the Church, which enraged the Roman Catholics.

28. “Printing technology gave women a chance to share their feelings with the world outside.”

Support the statement with any five suitable examples.

Answer:

Printing technology gave women a chance to share their feelings with the world outside. The following are the examples supporting the statement.

- Rashundari Devi, a young married girl in a very orthodox household, learnt to read in the secrecy of her kitchen. Later she wrote her autobiography Amar Jiban which was published in 1876. It was the first full length autobiography in Bengali.
- Many other women writers, like Kailashbhashini Debi, highlighted experiences of women like their imprisonment at home, ignorance and unjust treatment in their writings.
- Tarabai Shinde and Pandita Ramabai narrated the plight of upper cast Hindu women, especially the widows.
- Tamil writers expressed the poor status of women.
- By the early twentieth century, journals written by women became popular, which highlighted issues like women’s education, widowhood and widow- remarriage. Some of them highlighted fashion lessons to women and entertainment through short storing and serialized novels.

29. How did the knowledge of wood-block printing come to Europe? Explain.

Answer:

The knowledge of wood block printing came to Europe in the following ways.

- Paper reached Europe in the 11th century from China through Silk Route. This made possible the production of manuscripts.
- China already possessed the technology of wood-block printing. Travellers like Marco Polo brought this knowledge to Italy.
- Now Italians began to produce books with this technology.
- This increased the demand for books.
- Soon it spread to other parts of Europe.

30. What was the attitude of liberal and conservative Indians towards women’s reading? How did women like Kailashbhashini Debi respond to this in their writings?

Answer:

The following points sum up the attitude of liberal and conservative Indians towards women’s reading.

- Liberal husbands and fathers began educating their womenfolk at home.
- They sent them to schools when women’s schools were set up in the cities and towns after the mid-nineteenth century.

- While conservative Hindus believed that a literate girl would be widowed, muslims feared that reading Urdu romances would corrupt Muslim women. Women like Kailashbhashini Debi responded to this in their writings in the following ways.
- Lives and feelings of women began to be written in particularly vivid and intense ways. From the 1860s, a few Bengali women like Kailashbhashini Debi wrote books highlighting the experiences of women.
- Kailashbhashini wrote about how women were imprisoned at home, kept in ignorance, forced to do hard domestic labour and treated unjustly by the very people they served.

31. Explain with examples the role of print culture in the bringing of French Revolution.

Answer:

The following points show the role of print culture in the bringing of French Revolution.

- Print popularised the ideas of the enlightenment thinkers. The writings of Voltaire and Rousseau were read widely.
- These thinkers argued for the rule of reason rather than custom and demanded that everything should be judged through the application of reason and rationality.
- Print created a new culture of dialogue and debate. All values, norms and institutions were re-evaluated and discussed by a public that had become aware of the power of reason and recognised the need to question existing ideas and beliefs.
- By the 1780s, there was an outpouring of literature that mocked the royalty and criticised their morality. In the process, it raised questions about the existing social order.
- Print did not directly shape their minds, but it did open up the possibility of thinking differently.

32. “Printing press played a major role in shaping the Indian society of the 19th century.”

Analyse the statement.

Answer:

The printing press played the following role in shaping the Indian society of the 19th century.

- Print media opened an era of debates and discussions on various socio-religious issues. It spread many new ideas. All the ideas were accepted only after logical thinking rather than accepting blindly.
- Socio-religious reformers are able to spread their ideas against several evil religious customs such as sati, female infanticide etc. Example: Gulamgiri of Jyotiba Phule.
- In north India the Muslim saints, the Ulemas, used cheap lithographic presses to print the religious newspapers. They wrote against British policy of religious conversion and changing of the Muslim personal laws.
- Among Hindus, it encouraged the reading of religious texts.
- It connected communities and people in different parts of India.
- By converging news from one place to another, newspapers created pan-Indian identities.

THE AGE OF INDUSTRIALISATION

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [1 MARK]

1. What are trade guilds?

Ans: Trade guilds are associations of traders and merchants that trained crafts people, maintained control over production and regulated prices.

2. Who is a ‘stapler’?

Ans: A stapler is a person who sorts wool according to its fibre.

3. Which city was known as finishing centre?

Ans: London was famous as the finishing centre.

4. Who created the first cotton mill?

Ans: The first cotton mill was created by Richard Arkwright.

5. What was the first symbol of the new era in England in the late 18th century?

Ans : Cotton became the first symbol of the new era in England in the late 18th century.

6. Who improved upon the steam engine produced by Newcomen?

Ans : James Watt.

7. Which industries were the dynamic industries of England during its earliest phase of industrialisation?

Ans : Cotton and Iron and steel industries.

8. Name the areas that demanded seasonal labour in England.

Ans : The production areas that demanded seasonal labour in England were gas works, breweries and dockyards.

9. Who invented the Spinning Jenny?

Ans : Spinning Jenny was devised by James Hargreaves.

10. Name an eminent pre-colonial port.

Ans : Surat was an eminent pre-colonial port.

11. To which ports did Surat on the Gujarat coast connect India?

Ans : Surat connected India to the Gulf and Red Sea Ports.

12. On which coast is Masulipatam situated?

Ans : Masulipatam is situated on the Coromandel coast.

13. Name two new ports which grew in importance after the decline of Surat and Hooghly.

Ans : Bombay and Calcutta.

14. Who was Henry Patullo? What did he say about the Indian textiles?

Ans : Henry Patullo was an East India Company official. He said that demand for Indian textile could never reduce, because no country produced goods of the same quality.

15. What were the paid servants of the East India Company to supervise the weavers called?

Ans : The paid servants of the East India Company to supervise the weavers were called the gomasthas.

16. What was China trade?

Ans : The British in India began exporting opium to China and took tea from China to England. Many Indians participated in this trade, provided finance, procuring supplies and shipping consignments. It was called China trade.

17. Who set up six joint stock companies in Bengal?

Ans : In Bengal, Dwarkanath Tagore set up six joint companies in 1830s and 1840s.

18. Who established the first Jute mill in India?

Ans : Seth Hukum Chand.

19. Which was the first Asian country to be industrialized?

Ans : India.

20. Why did the Manchester imports into India decline when the First World War started?

Ans : When the First World War started, the British mills were busy in supplying goods to the army. So Manchester imports into India declined.

21. Why did the handloom cloth production increase in the 20th century?

Ans : Handloom cloth production increased in the 20th century because new technology like looms with flying shuttle were introduced.

22. What message did the Indian manufacturers try to give through advertisements?

Ans : The Indian manufacturers tried to convey the message through advertisements that if you cared for the nation then buy Indian goods.

23. What were the first symbols of industrialisation?

Ans : Cotton and metal (iron and steel) production was the first symbol of industrialisation.

24. What is the monopoly of trade?

Ans : Monopoly of trade is the practice, in which a country develops a system of management and control, eliminating competition, control costs, ensure regulated supply of products. For example, British colonisers used to monopolise products such as silk and cotton in India.

25. Who are the bourgeoisie?

Ans : The upper middle class in Europe is called the bourgeoisie.

26. How did handloom cloth production increase in early 20th century?

Ans : Handloom cloth production increased in the early 20th century due to new technology like looms with flying shuttle.

27. How did the early Indian entrepreneurs make their fortune?

Ans : The early entrepreneurs made their fortune through China trade.

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [3 MARKS]

28. Why did the industrial production increase in India during the First World War? (2014)

Answer: The War had created a new opportunity for the industrial production in India. The War situation had forced the British mills to produce things that were needed for the army. This had led to the decline of Manchester imports into India. Suddenly, Indian mills had a vast home market to supply to:

As the War prolonged, Indian factories were called upon to supply war needs: jute bags, cloth for army uniforms, tents and leather boots, horse and mule saddles and a host of other items.

New factories were set up and old ones ran multiple shifts. Many new workers were employed and everyone was made to work longer hours.

Over the war years, industrial production boomed, local industries consolidated their position, substituting foreign manufactures and capturing home markets.

29. How did a series of inventions in the eighteenth century increased the efficiency of each step of the production process in cotton textile industry? Explain. (2013)

Answer: A series of inventions in the 18th century increased the efficiency in every step of the production process, especially of cotton. The process of producing cotton involved carding, twisting, spinning and milling.

The inventions enhanced the output per worker, enabling each worker to produce more, and they made possible the production of stronger threads and yarn.

Richard Arkwright then created the cotton mill. Cloth production was spread all over the countryside and was carried out in village households.

Also now the costly new machines could be purchased, set up and maintained in the mill under one roof and management. This allowed a more careful supervision over the production process, a watch over the quality and the regulation of labour, all of which was difficult to do when production was in the countryside.

30. What problems were faced by the Indian cotton weavers in the 19th century? Describe. (2012)

Answer: The Indian cotton weavers faced many problems in the 19th century:

Their export collapsed.

The local market shrank being flooded by the Manchester imports. Produced by machines at lower costs, the Manchester cotton goods were so cheap that they attracted the buyers and the Indian textiles could not compete with them.

By 1860, Indian weavers faced a new problem. They could not get sufficient supply of raw cotton of good quality. This happened because a Civil War had broken out in America and the cotton supplies from the US to Britain were cut off and Britain turned to India. As raw cotton export from India increased, the price of raw cotton shot up. Indian weavers were forced to buy raw cotton at a very high price, so weaving did not remain profitable.

Factories in India also produced goods at a mass scale which flooded the Indian markets. Thus the Indian weavers faced a tough time and it became difficult to survive.

31. Why did technological changes occur slowly in Britain in early 19th century? Explain any three reasons. (2012)

Answer: Technological changes occurred slowly in Britain due to the following reasons:

New technology was expensive and merchants and industrialists were cautious about using it. For example, at the beginning of the 19th century, there were only 321 steam engines. There were no buyers of steam engines for years.

The machines often broke down and repair was costly.

The machines were not as effective as their inventors and manufacturers claimed.

Machines were oriented to produce uniform, standardised goods for a mass market. But the demand in the market was often for goods with intricate designs and specific shapes which required human skill, not mechanical technology. At that time the upper classes preferred things produced by hand.

32. Who were gomasthas? Why were they appointed? How did they treat the weavers? (2012)

Answer: The paid servants appointed by the East India Company to supervise weavers are called gomasthas.

The East India Company appointed them to establish a more direct control over the weavers and to eliminate traders and brokers connected with cloth trade.

The gomasthas acted arrogantly and punished weavers for delays in supply, often beating them. In many weaving villages there were reports of clashes between weavers and gomasthas as they often marched into villages with sepoys and peons.

33. Who were ‘gomasthas?’ How did they become good partners of the British management system? (2014, 2015)

Answer: The Gomasthas were paid servants whose job was to supervise weavers, collect supplies and examine the quality of cloth. The aim of the East India Company behind appointing gomasthas was to work out a system of management and control that would eliminate competition, control costs and ensure regular supplies of cotton and silk.

Soon there were clashes between the weavers and the gomasthas who began ill-treating the weavers.

It developed a system of management and control that would eliminate competition, control costs and ensure regular supplies of cotton and silk from India. For this reason, gomasthas were appointed to supervise, collect supplies and examine the quality of cloth.

They did not allow the company weavers to sell their produce to other buyers. Once an order was placed, the weavers were given loans to purchase the raw material. Weavers who had accepted loans from the company had to hand over the cloth they produced to the gomasthas only.

34. Describe the achievements of any three early industrialists in British India. (2013)

Answer: Having earned enough from trade, some businessmen had visions of developing industrial enterprises in India.

In Bengal, Dwarkanath Tagore made his fortune in the China trade. He turned to industrial investment, setting up six joint stock companies in 1830s and 1840s.

In Bombay, Parsis like Dinshaw Petit and Jamsetjee Nusserwanjee Tata who built huge industrial empires in India accumulated their initial wealth from exports to China and raw cotton shipments to England. Seth Hukumchand, a Marwari businessman, who set up the first Indian jute mill in Calcutta in 1971, also traded with China.

35. How did many Indian Entrepreneurs survive despite of tight economic controls imposed by the British Government? (2013)

Answer: Many Indians became junior players in the trade with China by providing finance, procuring supplies and shipping consignments.

Some merchants from Madras traded with Burma, Middle East and East Africa and accumulated capital.

Certain other commercial groups operated within India by carrying goods from one place to another, banking money, transferring funds between cities and financing traders.

36. Explain any three factors responsible for the decline of the cotton textile industry in India in the mid-nineteenth century. (2013)

OR

Describe any three main reasons for the decline of textile exports from India in the 19th century. (2014)

Answer: As cotton industries developed in England, industrial groups began to pressurize the Government to impose import duties on cotton textiles so that Manchester goods could sell in Britain without facing any competition from outside.

At the same time industrialists persuaded the East India Company to sell British manufactures in Indian market as well. Exports of British cotton goods increased dramatically in the early 19th century.

The export market for the Indian cotton weavers collapsed and the local market shrank, being glutted with Manchester imports.

The imported cotton goods were cheap and our weavers could not compete with them.

When the American Civil War broke out the cotton supplies to Britain from the US were cut off. As raw cotton export from India increased, the price of raw cotton shot up. Weavers in India were starved of supplies and forced to buy raw cotton at exorbitant prices.

37. Advertisements played a part in expanding the markets for products and in shaping a new consumer culture. Explain. (2014)

OR

Explain the role played by advertisements in creating new consumers for the British products. (2014)

OR

In which ways did the British and the Indian manufacturers and traders advertise their products? (2013)

Answer: When Manchester industrialists began selling cloth in India, they put labels on the cloth bundles, to make the place of manufacture and the name of the company familiar to the buyer. When buyers saw 'Made in Manchester', written in bold on the label, they felt confident to buy the cloth.

But labels did not carry words and texts. They carried images and were beautifully illustrated with images of Indian gods and goddesses. The printed image of Krishna or Saraswati was also intended to make the manufacture from a foreign land, appear familiar to Indians.

Manufacturers also printed calendars to popularise their products. These calendars were used even by the illiterate. They were hung in tea shops and in the homes of the poor and even in offices and middle class apartments.

When Indian manufacturers advertised, the nationalist message was clear and loud. If you care for the nation, then buy only 'Indian' products. Advertisements became a vehicle of the nationalist message of Swadeshi.

38. Why was it difficult to get jobs in Indian factories and mills even when so many of them had come up in the 19th century? (2015)

Answer: Even when the mills multiplied and demand for workers increased, it was difficult to get jobs. The reason was that

The number seeking jobs always remained more than the jobs available.

During the same time agriculture was also not prosperous. Therefore, there was always a large influx of unemployed youths from villages who came to cities and towns looking for jobs in the newly set up mills and factories.

Entry into the mills was also restricted. Industrialists usually employed jobbers to get new recruits. Very often, the jobber was an old and trusted worker. He got people from his own village, ensured them jobs and helped them settle in the city. Gradually, they began to demand money and gifts for this favour and began controlling the lives of workers.

39. How was foreign trade from India conducted before the age of machine industries? Explain. (2015)

Answer: Before the age of machine industries, silk and cotton goods from India dominated the international markets in textile. Coarse cottons were produced in many countries, but finer varieties came from India. Armenian and Persian merchants took the goods from Punjab to Afghanistan, Eastern Persia and Central Asia.

Bales of fine textiles were carried on camel back through the mountain passes of North-West Frontier.

A vibrant sea trade operated through pre-colonial ports—Surat connected India to the Gulf, Masulipatnam on the Coromandel coast and Hooghly in Bengal had trade links with South East Asian ports.

40. Analyse the contribution of Dwarkanath Tagore in the field of industrial development. (2015)

Answer: In Bengal, Dwarkanath Tagore made his fortune in the China trade before he turned to industrial investment. He set up six joint-stock companies in 1830s and 1840s. Tagore's enterprises sank along with those of others in the wider business crises of the 1840s, but later in the 19th century many of the China traders became successful industrialists. Dwarkanath Tagore believed that India would develop through westernization and industrialisation. He invested in shipping, mining, banking, plantation and insurance. He had visions of developing industrial enterprises in India.

41. How did many Indian Entrepreneurs survive despite of tight economic controls imposed by the British Government? (2017 OD)

Answer: Many Indians became junior players in the trade with China by providing finance, procuring supplies and shipping consignments.

Some merchants from Madras traded with Burma, Middle East and East Africa and accumulated capital.

Certain other commercial groups operated within India by carrying goods from one place to another, banking money, transferring funds between cities and financing traders.

42. Describe the achievements of any three early industrialists in British India. (2017 D)

Answer: Having earned enough from trade, some businessmen had visions of developing industrial enterprises in India.

In Bengal, Dwarkanath Tagore made his fortune in the China trade. He turned to industrial investment, setting up six joint stock companies in 1830s and 1840s.

In Bombay, Parsis like Dinshaw Petit and Jamsetjee Nusserwanjee Tata who built huge industrial empires in India accumulated their initial wealth from exports to China and raw cotton shipments to England. Seth Hukumchand, a Marwari businessman, who set up the first Indian jute mill in Calcutta in 1971, also traded with China.

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [5 MARKS]

43. Why were there frequent clashes between gomasthas and weavers in the villages? (2012)

Answer: The 'gomasthas' were paid servants whose job was to supervise weavers, collect supplies and examine the cloth. In many weaving villages there were clashes between the gomasthas and the weavers who began ill-treating the villagers.

- The earlier supply merchants had lived within the villages and had a close relationship with the weavers, looking after their needs and helping them in times of crisis.
- The new gomasthas were outsiders with no long-term social link with the village.
- They acted arrogantly and punished weavers for delays in supplies, beating and flogging them with the help of sepoys and peons.
- The weavers lost their freedom to bargain for prices and sell to different buyers and received miserably low prices from the company.
- The loans they had accepted had tied them to the British Company.

44. Describe the process of gradual growth of factories in England in the light of problems it faced. (2012)

Answer: The earliest factories in England came up by the 1730s. Their number multiplied in the late 18th century. A series of inventions in the 18th century increased the efficacy of each step of the production process. They enhanced the output per worker, enabling each worker to produce more. With the creation of cotton mill by Richard Arkwright, all the processes of cloth production were brought together under one roof and management. This allowed a more careful supervision of the production process, a watch over quality, and the regulation of labour, all of which had been difficult to do when production was in the countryside.

45. Highlight Any five points which enabled the handloom sector score over machine made goods and face the competition. (2013)

Answer: The handloom sector scored over the machine made goods and was able to face competition because:

This happened partly because of technological advancements. By the second decade of the 20th century, weavers started using fly shuttle. This increased productivity of every worker, sped up production and reduced labour demand. By 1941, over 35 per cent of handlooms in India were fitted with fly shuttles. In regions like Travancore, Madras, Mysore, Cochin and Bengal, 70 to 80 per cent of handlooms had fly shuttles.

There were many other small inventions that helped weavers improve productivity and compete with mills.

Also, the demand for finer varieties of cloth bought by the rich, was very stable. Even famines did not affect the sale of Banarsi or Baluchari sarees.

Mill production could not imitate and compete with specialized weaves such as the famous sarees with woven borders and the famous lungis and handkerchiefs of Madras.

46. How did the First World War prove to be a boon to the Indian Industries? Explain. (2013)

Answer: The First World War proved to be a boon to Indian Industries:

The war created a dramatically new situation with British Mills busy with war production to meet the needs of the army, Manchester imports into India declined.

Suddenly, Indian mills had a vast home market to supply to.

As the war prolonged, Indian factories were called upon to supply war needs, jute bags, cloth for army uniforms, tents and leather boots, horse and mule saddles and a host of other items.

New factories were set up and old ones ran multiple shifts.

Many new workers were employed and everyone was made to work longer hours. Over the war years industrial production boomed, local industrialists consolidated their position, substituting foreign manufactures and capturing home markets.

47. Explain the process of industrialization in Britain during the 19th century. (2014)

Answer: The most dynamic industries in Britain were clearly cotton and metals. Growing at a rapid pace, cotton was the leading sector in the first phase of industrialization up to the 1840s. Later iron and steel industry led the way. With the expansion of railways in England from the 1840s and in the colonies from 1860s, the demand for iron and steel increased.

The new industries could not displace traditional industries. At the end of the 19th century, less than 20 per cent of the total workforce was employed in technologically advanced industrial sectors. The pace of change in the 'traditional' industries was not set by steam-powered cotton or metal industries. Ordinary and small innovations were the basis of growth in many non-mechanized sectors such as food processing, building, pottery, glass work, tanning, furniture making and production of implements.

The technological changes occurred slowly. New technology was expensive and merchants and industrialists were cautious about using it. The machine often broke down and repair was costly.

48. Explain any five ways by which new markets and consumers were created in India by British manufacturers. (2014)

OR

Describe the techniques which were adopted by the Manchester industrialists to sell their goods in India. (2015)

Answer: When Manchester industrialists began selling cloth in India, they put labels on the cloth bundles, to make the place of manufacture and the name of the company familiar to the buyer. When buyers saw 'Made in Manchester', written in bold on the label, they felt confident to buy the cloth.

But labels did not carry words and texts. They carried images and were beautifully illustrated with images of Indian gods and goddesses. The printed image of Krishna or Saraswati was also intended to make the manufacture from a foreign land, appear familiar to India.

Manufacturers also printed calendars to popularise their products. These calendars were used even by the illiterate. They were hung in tea shops and in the homes of the poor and even in offices and middle class apartments.

Figures of important personages, of emperors and nawabs adorned the advertisements and calenders. The message often seemed to say that if you respect a royal figure, then respect this product as it was being used by kings.

When Indian manufacturers advertised, the nationalist message was clear and loud. If you care for the nation, then buy only 'Indian' products. Advertisements became a vehicle of the nationalist message of Swadeshi.

49. How did cotton factories become an intimate part of the English landscape in the early nineteenth century? Explain. (2015)

Answer: A series of inventions in the eighteenth century increased the efficiency in every step of the production process, especially of cotton. The process of producing cotton involved carding, twisting, spinning and milling.

The inventions enhanced the output per worker, enabling each worker to produce more, and they made possible the production of stronger threads and yam.

Richard Arkwright then created the cotton mill. Cloth production was spread all over the countryside and was carried out in village households.

Also, now the costly new machines could be purchased, set up and maintained in the mill under one roof and management. This made the process more centralised and integrated.

This allowed a more careful supervision over the production process, a watch over the quality and the regulation of labour, all of which was difficult to do when production was in the countryside. In the early nineteenth century new mills and factories with new technologies became extremely visible.

.....

POWER SHARING

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [1 MARK]

- 1. In Sri Lanka, the policies of the government sought to ensure the dominance of which language speaking people?**

Answer:

In Sri Lanka, the policies of the government under the Act of 1956 sought to ensure the dominance of Sinhala speaking.

- 2. What does the term majoritarianism signify?**

Answer:

The term majoritarianism signifies a belief that the majority community should rule a country.

- 3. What is the official religion of Sri Lanka?**

Answer: Buddhism is the religion of Sri Lanka.

- 4. Which major social groups of Sri Lanka constituted the largest share in population?**

OR

After independence, Sri Lanka witnessed the supremacy of which community?

Answer: Sinhalas constituted the largest share in population in Sri Lanka.

- 5. How many times did Belgium amend its constitution regarding power sharing?**

Answer: Belgium amended its constitution four times between 1970 and 1993.

- 6. Name the third level government of Belgium.**

Answer:

The third level government of Belgium is known as the Community Government.

- 7. Which city was chosen as the headquarters of the European Union?**

Answer:

Brussels was chosen as the headquarters of the European Union.

- 8. What does the horizontal power sharing signify?**

Answer:

Horizontal power sharing signifies power shared among various organs of the government like legislature, executive and judiciary.

- 9. Give the meaning of coalition government.**

Answer:

A government formed by the coming together of two or more political parties is called coalition government.

- 10. In which form of power sharing, power is shared at different levels of government?**

Answer:

Power is shared at different levels of government in vertical form of power sharing.

- 11. What is separation of power?**

Answer:

The separation of power is the power sharing among the different organs of government with their specific jurisdiction.

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [3 MARKS]

12. Explain how power is shared among between different organs of government.

Answer:

- In democracy, power is shared among different organs of government, i.e. legislature, executive and judiciary through the horizontal distribution of power. It is so because it allows different organs of government to be placed at the same level to exercise different powers.
- In horizontal division, different organs exercise their power based on the concept of separation of powers such as legislature makes laws, executive enforces these laws and judiciary interprets these laws. This results in balance of power among different organs of government. No organ can exercise unlimited power as each organ checks the other. Hence, in horizontal division the concept of checks and balance is followed.
- The power is shared between different organs of the government in horizontal form of power sharing.

13. Explain the three ways by which Belgium has accommodated the existing regional differences and cultural diversities.

OR

Explain how Belgium was able to solve her ethnic problems.

OR

Highlight the measures adopted by the Belgium Constitution for the prevention of conflicts in Belgium.

Answer:

When the Belgian leaders recognized the existence of regional differences and cultural diversities, they amended their constitution four times in order to accommodate these differences.

The following are the ways in which Belgium has accommodated the existing regional differences and cultural diversities.

- Equal number of ministers: The Government of Belgium has equal number of Dutch- and French-speaking ministers. This has been done to give equal power to the majority and the minority language speaking groups.
- Setting up of Community Government: A third kind of government, named the community government, is introduced in addition to the Central and the State Government. This government has the power regarding cultural, educational and lingual issues. This government comprises members from all the three communities—Dutch-speaking, French-speaking and German-speaking.
- Fair share of power: Many powers of the Central government have been given to the state governments of the two regions of the country. The state governments are not subordinate to the Central government but are independent.
- Equal representation: In the State Government of Brussels—the capital city—both the French- and Dutch-speaking communities have equal representation.

14. Sharing of powers makes a country more powerful and united. Do you agree with the statement? Why?

Answer:

Yes, I agree with the statement. Power sharing makes a country more united.

- Power sharing helps to reduce the possibility of conflict between social groups.
- It is a good way to ensure the stability of political order as social conflict often leads to violence and political instability.
- Power sharing is the very spirit of democracy. The concept of democracy is a system of government of the people, by the people and for the people, which emphasizes on distribution of power among people.

- It involves sharing powers with those affected by its exercise and who have to live with its effects, so that the people would be consulted on how they are to be governed.

15. Describe any three provisions of the act which was passed in Sri Lanka in 1956 to establish Sinhala supremacy.

Answer:

The following are the majoritarian measures adopted by the Sri Lankan government to establish Sinhala supremacy.

- In the year 1956, an act was passed, which established Sinhala as the official language to be used in Sri Lanka disregarding the minority group of Tamils. The passing of this act created a feeling of alienation among the minority group, i.e. Sri Lankan Tamils and they started to feel left-out from the society.
- The government then started adopting and formulating government policies that favoured the Sinhala people in government jobs and for university positions, which made the Sri Lankan Tamils feel ousted.
- The Sri Lankan Government further proclaimed that they shall foster and protect only Buddhism as their State religion and refused to cater to any other religion disregarding the religion of Sri Lankan Tamils.

16. How have Belgium and Sri Lanka dealt with the question of power sharing differently?

Answer:

- Sri Lanka and Belgium are both democratic countries yet have a very diverse social set-up. Both the countries have adopted very different approaches when it comes to power sharing.
- Belgium produced an ideal example of democratic system. It adopted the policy of accommodation of social and ethnics divisions. On the other hand, Sri Lanka also adopted democratic system but followed majoritarian policies.
- Under the Belgium model of democracy, power was shared among two ethnic groups. Sri Lanka favoured the interests of the majority Sinhala community.
- In Belgium, both the groups had equal share in working of government but in Sri Lanka the minority community was isolated.
- To maintain political stability and unity, equal representation was provided to both the groups. Apart from that, community government of both the ethnic groups also existed at the local level. Sri Lanka, however, had no such arrangement.
- Belgium constitution was amended four times before arriving at a final draft to prevent civil strife. In Sri Lanka, majoritarianism led to civil war for twenty long years.

17. Describe any three ‘majoritarian measures’ taken by the Sri Lankan Government to establish Sinhala supremacy.

Answer:

The following are the majoritarian measures adopted by the Sri Lankan government to establish Sinhala supremacy.

- In the year 1956, an act was passed, which established Sinhala as the official language to be used in Sri Lanka disregarding the minority group of Tamils. The passing of this act created a feeling of alienation among the minority group, i.e. Sri Lankan Tamils and they started to feel left-out from the society.
- The government then started adopting and formulating government policies that favoured the Sinhala people in government jobs and for university positions, which made the Sri Lankan Tamils feel ousted.
- The Sri Lankan Government further proclaimed that they shall foster and protect only Buddhism as their State religion and refused to cater to any other religion disregarding the religion of Sri Lankan Tamils.

18. Do you think that the steps taken by Shri Lankan Government to establish the supremacy of Sinhalas were justified be long lasting? Give your view point.

Answer:

The steps taken by the Sri Lankan government to establish Sinhalas' supremacy cannot be justified as long lasting because of the following reasons.

- These steps ignored the interests of a minority community. Even the basic rights were not given to them.
- Discrimination based on religion and language further deprived other communities in Sri Lanka.
- Repeated denial of the demands further developed distrust and ignited the situation that resulted in a civil war causing terrible setback to Sri Lankan social, cultural and economic life.

19. Sharing of powers makes a country more powerful and united'. Justify the statement.

Answer:

Sharing of power makes a country more powerful and united because of the following reasons.

- Power sharing ensures that all people have stake in government.
- Power sharing ensures maximum participation. It upholds the concept of people's rule. It always brings better outcomes in democracy. It ensures the political stability in democracy.
- Power sharing accommodates diverse groups. It helps to reduce the possibility of conflict between social groups.

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [5 MARKS]

20. What is majoritarianism? How has it increased the feelings of alienation among Sri Lankan Tamils? Explain with examples.

Answer:

Majoritarianism is a concept which signifies a belief that the majority community should be able to rule a country in whichever way it wants. In this type of rule, the majority community disregards the wishes and needs of the minority community.

- The majoritarian concept has increased the strong feelings of alienation among Sri Lankan Tamils after a series of majoritarian measures adopted by the democratically-elected government in Sri Lanka after its independence in 1948 to establish Sinhala Supremacy.
- In 1956, an act was passed to recognise Sinhala as the only official language, thus disregarding Tamil.
- The Government followed preferential policies that favoured Sinhala applicants for university positions and government jobs.
- A new constitution advocated that the state shall protect and foster Buddhism.

21. Describe the demands of Sri Lankan Tamils. How did they struggle for their demands?

Answer:

The following were the demands of Sri Lankan Tamils.

- Recognition of Tamil language and that Tamil should be given equal status with that of the Sinhala language and should be added as an official language.
- There should be no discrimination between the Sri Lankan Tamils and Sinhala residents of Sri Lanka in government jobs and university posts.
- Their religion should be equally respected with that of Buddhism and they should be given equal political rights.

They struggled for their demands in the following ways.

- By 1980, several political organizations were formed demanding an independent Tamil state.
- Sri Lankan Tamils launched struggles for the fulfillment of their rights.
- As a result, a civil war was proclaimed and thousands of people were killed when their legitimate demands were denied by the Sri Lankan government

22. Explain two reasons as to why power sharing is desirable.

Answer:

There are many reason as to why power sharing is important in a democracy. The following are the two main sets in which the reasons can be broadly divided.

Prudential reason:

- Power sharing helps to reduce the possibility of conflict between social groups.
- It is a good way to ensure the stability of political order as social conflict often leads to violence and political stability.

Moral Reason:

- Power sharing is the very spirit of democracy. The concept of democracy is a system of government of the people, by the people and for the people, which emphasizes on distribution of power among people.
- It involves sharing powers with those affected by its exercise and who have to live its effects, so that the people would be consulted on how they are to be governed.

23. Bring out any two sharp contrasts between Belgium and Sri Lankan democracies.

Answer:

Sri Lanka and Belgium are both democratic countries yet have a very diverse social set-up. Both the countries have adopted very different approaches when it comes to power sharing.

- Belgium produced an ideal example of democratic system. It adopted the policy of accommodation of social and ethnics divisions. On the other hand, Sri Lanka also adopted democratic system but followed majoritarian policies.
- Under the Belgium model of democracy, power was shared among two ethnic groups. Sri Lanka favoured the interests of the majority Sinhala community.
- In Belgium, both the groups had equal share in working of government but in Sri Lanka the minority community was isolated.
- To maintain political stability and unity, equal representation was provided to both the groups. Apart from that, community government of both the ethnic groups also existed at the local level. Sri Lanka, however, had no such arrangement.
- Belgium constitution was amended four times before arriving at a final draft to prevent civil strife. In Sri Lanka, majoritarianism led to civil war for twenty long years.

FEDERALISM

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [1 MARK]

- 1. Name the countries having ‘coming together’ federation and ‘holding together’ federation.**

Answer:

Countries having ‘coming together’ federation are – USA, Switzerland, Australia.

Countries having ‘holding together’ federation are – India, Spain, Belgium.

- 2. How can the fundamental provisions of the Indian constitution be changed?**

Answer:

The fundamental provisions of the Indian constitution can be changed in a bilateral way wherein the consent of both the levels of government is required.

- 3. Why have the subjects like defence, foreign affairs, banking, etc. been included in the Union List?**

Answer:

Defence, foreign affairs, banking are included in the Union List because these subjects are of national importance and require a uniform policy for execution.

- 4. In India’s federal system, which level of government has the power to legislate on residuary subjects?**

OR

Which level of government in India legislates on the residuary subjects?

Answer:

In India’s federal system’ Union government has the power to legislate on residuary subjects.

- 5. In case of a clash between the laws made by the centre and a state on a subject in the concurrent list, whose law will prevail?**

Answer:

In case of a clash between the laws made by the centre and state on a subject in the concurrent list, the Union Law will prevail.

- 6. Which two Indian states have been given special status?**

Answer:

Jammu and Kashmir and Arunachal Pradesh have been given special status in Indian federation.

- 7. Which judgement of the Supreme Court made Indian federal power sharing more effective?**

Answer:

The historic judgement in which Supreme Court declared that Central government cannot dismiss the state government in an arbitrary manner, made the Indian federal power sharing more effective.

- 8. What are the two main basis on which new states of India have been created?**

Answer:

Language and regional ethnicity are the main basis on which new states have been created.

- 9. How many languages are spoken in India and what is the ratio of Hindi speaking people in India?**

Answer:

There are 114 languages spoken in India out of which 22 languages (including Hindi) are recognised as scheduled languages. About 40 per cent people in India speak Hindi language.

10. What does the concept of decentralisation signify?**Answer:**

The concept of decentralisation signifies – power taken away from central and state government and given to local government at both the urban and rural levels.

11. Which two constitutional amendments of 1992 deal with the local self-government?**Answer:**

73rd and 74th Constitutional Amendments of 1992 deal with the local self-government at local level in rural and urban areas.

12. What is the official post for the chairperson of a municipal corporation?**Answer:**

Mayor is the official post for the chairperson of a municipal corporation.

13. Define the term federalism.**Answer:**

Federalism is a system of government in which the power is divided between a central authority and various constituent units of the country. Both these levels of the government—the central and the state—enjoy their powers independent of each other.

14. Name any two subjects which are included in the Union List.**Answer:**

Foreign affairs and defence are included in the Union List.

15. How many seats are reserved for women in the local bodies in India?**Answer:**

At least one-third of the seats are reserved for women in the local bodies in India.

16. What other factors besides politics keep the federations united?**Answer:**

Besides politics other factors that keep federations united are:

- Power sharing arrangements between the central and state governments
- Independent role of judiciary
- Language ethnicity
- Response to conflicting claims and
- Active participation of the people.

17. Which is the highest institution of Panchayati Raj in rural areas?**Answer:**

Zila parishad is the highest institution of Panchayati Raj in rural areas.

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [3 MARKS]**18. Explain the vertical division of power giving example from India.****Answer:**

- The power shared among the different levels of the government is known as the vertical distribution of power. It involves higher and lower levels of government. These levels are the Union government, the State government and the Local government. In India, the Union government is at the highest level. The government at the provincial or regional level is the State government. The Indian Constitution has further laid down the provision of distribution of power. This division of power is further extended to the levels of the

government lower than the state governments. They are also called Municipal Corporations and the Municipalities in urban areas and Panchayati Raj in rural areas.

- Each level of the government exercises its power. There is no specification of the system of checks and balances. Each level has its own powers and areas of jurisdiction and no level can interfere in each other's functioning. Such an arrangement ensures deepening of democracy.

19. Judiciary plays an important role in Indian federalism.' Justify the statement.

OR

In what ways is the judiciary important for Indian federalism?

Answer:

- Judiciary with the supreme court at the apex is the sole interpreter of Indian Constitution.
- It plays a pivotal role in the implementation of constitutional provisions and procedures.
- Judiciary administers both the union and state laws which are applicable to the cases coming up for adjudication.
- The disputes about the division of powers are settled by the Judiciary. Hence, judiciary is considered as the guardian of the Indian federalism. (any three)

20. Compare the federations of coming together type and holding together type?

Answer:

The following are the differences between coming together type and holding together federations.

Coming Together Federation	Holding Together Federation
(a) Coming Together Federalism involves independent states coming together on their own to form a bigger unit.	(a) In this system the large power or country decides to divide its power between its constituent states and national government.
(b) In coming together, units try to increase their security by pooling sovereignty and retaining identity.	(b) In holding together there is absence of pooling sovereignty and retaining identity. In fact, in this federation the central government subordinates over the constituent units.
(c) In this category of federations, all the constituent units usually have equal power and are strong vis-a-vis the federal government.	(c) Whereas, in this category, the central government tends to be more powerful vis-a-vis the states. Sometimes constituent units of the federation have unequal powers. For example, in India, Jammu and Kashmir has been granted special status.
(d) USA, Switzerland, and Australia are examples of Coming Together Federations.	(d) India, Spain and Belgium are examples of Holding Together Federations.

21. Examine the controversy over Hindi and English as the official language.

Answer:

- The controversy over the Hindi and English as the official language started when our Constitution made the provision that the use of English for official purposes was to stop in 1965.
- However, many non-Hindi speaking states demanded that the use of English should continue. In Tamil Nadu, this movement took a violent form.
- So the central government responded by agreeing to continue the use of English along with Hindi for official purposes.

- Thus, the flexibility shown by Indian political leaders helped our country to avoid the tense situation like that in Sri Lanka. (any three)

22. Explain five changes towards decentralization brought in the Constitution after the amendments made in 1992.

Answer:

The following steps were taken towards decentralization after 1992.

- It was made constitutionally mandatory to hold regular elections to local government bodies.
- Seats were reserved for Scheduled Castes (SCs), Scheduled Tribes (STs) and Other Backward communities (OBCs) in the elected bodies.
- Women were given one-third representation.
- An independent institution, called state election commission, was created to conduct local body elections.
- State governments were required to share this power and revenue with local bodies.

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [5 MARKS]

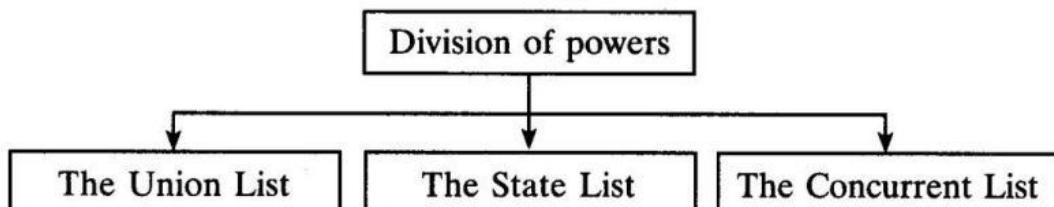
23. Explain the threefold distribution of legislative powers between the Union Government and the State Governments.

OR

How are the legislative powers divided between the Union government and the State Governments?

Answer:

Legislative powers are divided between the Union government and the State Governments by the Constitution of India. The Constitution is the supreme power in the country and the legislative powers are divided into various areas of government jurisdiction into three lists.



The Union List: The Union List is given in Seventh Schedule in the Constitution of India on which Parliament has exclusive power to legislate. It contains areas like defence, foreign affairs, currency and communications.

The State List: The State List is also in the Seventh Schedule of the constitution containing subjects like social service, police and Health, which are under the jurisdiction of the state government. Only state legislature can pass laws on these subjects.

The Concurrent List: The Concurrent List contains items like criminal law, forests, population control in which both parliament and state legislature can pass laws. However, in case of any conflict arising between the laws made by the parliament and the laws made by the state legislature, the laws made by the parliament will prevail.

24. Explain any four features of federalism.

OR

Which five provisions of Indian Constitution make India a full-fledged federation?

OR

How has federalism succeeded in India? What policies adopted by India have ensured this success?

Answer:

A federation is a country in which the powers are divided between the union and its constituents. India is an example of holding together federation, where the country decides to create constituent units, thereby dividing the powers and duties between the centre and the states.

The following are the five provisions that make India a full-fledged federation.

- Two or more levels of government: We have a federal system whereby the constitution has more than two tiers of the government, viz. the Union
- Government, State Governments and Local Government. This implies that there are more than two levels of government administration among which powers are divided and duties are given.
- **Three Lists:** The powers are divided between the Centre and the States by three Lists: Union list, State List and Concurrent list.
- Union List deals with the issues relating to the Centre, State List deals with the issues relating to the States and Concurrent List deals with the matters of both the Centre and the States.
- **Rigid Constitution:** The Government of India is governed by the Constitution of India and it is considered the Supreme Power in the Country. It is not an easy task to amend the constitution. For a constitutional provision to be amended, it requires ratification by half of the State Legislatures, failing which the Constitution cannot be amended.
- **Bicameral Legislature:** India has a bicameral legislature which means that the Parliament consists of two houses, viz, the Lok Sabha and the Rajya Sabha. One represents the country and the other represents the interest of the constituent states.
- **Financial Autonomy:** The revenue sources of both the Centre and States have been clearly defined, that ensures financial autonomy to both the Centre and the States. In layman's language, the Centre and the State have different sources of income, which means they are independent of each other when it comes to revenue.
- **Independent Judiciary:** Independent judiciary is the essence of federal government. Here, courts have the power to interpret the constitution and the powers of the different levels of government. In India, the highest court—the Supreme Court—acts as an umpire if a dispute arises between the different levels of government in the exercise of their respective powers,

25. The creation of linguistic states was the first and the major test of democratic politics in our country. Justify the statement.

Answer:

The creation of linguistic states was the first and the major test of democratic politics in our country.

- After 1947, the boundaries of several old states of India were proposed to be changed to ensure that people who spoke the same language lived in the same state. It was felt that it would ease administrative constraints also.
- Some states like Nagaland were not created on the basis of language but because of their distinct culture, ethnicity and geography.
- When the demand for the formation of linguistic states rose, some leaders feared that it would again lead to disintegration.
- This idea was thus resisted for some time fearing any further tension or conflict within the country.
- But when the actual creation of states was done on the basis of language, it so proved that the country was more united. This process did away with all fears and tension.
- Thus, the framing of the language policy was the test for Indian federation. It inspired the confidence in different language speaking people that no language will be imposed on them. In a way Language policy has strengthened the unity and integrity of India.

26. Explain democratic policies adopted by Government of India which made it a successful federation.

Answer:

The following democratic policies have helped India to be a successful federation.

- The powers of the central and state governments have been clearly separated under the Union, State and Concurrent Lists. It removes the possibility of any type of interference in the functioning of the central and state governments.
- A three-tier system of governance has been approved under the Union, State and Local governments. They govern the people at their respective levels.
- Some states like Jammu and Kashmir and Arunachal Pradesh have been given special status so as to maintain their autonomy.
- The fundamental structure of the Indian Constitution cannot be unilaterally changed by the Parliament. Any amendment in the Constitution needs the approval of both the houses of the Parliament and at least half of the total states.
- The sources of income of different levels of the government have been clearly stated in the Constitution to avoid any conflict.

27. Examine the composition and structure of urban local self-government.**Answer:**

Like Panchayati Raj at rural areas, local bodies exist for urban areas as well. The structure is like:

(a) Municipal Corporations: Big cities have municipal corporations. It is the top most urban local government.

- The corporation comprises members called councillors. These councillors are elected on adult franchise.
- The political head of the municipal corporation is known as Mayor.

Its main functions are:

- (i) Supply of wholesome water
- (ii) Supply of electricity
- (iii) Road transport services
- (iv) Establishment of hospitals, maternity and child welfare centres etc.
- (v) It has also the discretionary functions like construction of public parks, gardens, libraries, public housing, registration of marriages, surveys of buildings and lands etc.

(b) Municipalities: Municipalities are set up in towns. They are controlled by elected bodies consisting of people's representatives. Municipal Chairperson is the political head of the municipality. The functions of a municipality and of a municipal corporation are more or less identical. The urban local bodies get various types of grants from the state and central governments.

.....

GENDER, RELIGION AND CASTE

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [3 MARKS]

1. **What is casteism ? How is casteism in India different as compared to other societies ?**
OR

Describe any five features of the caste system prevailing in India.

Ans. (i) Organisation of people into social groups for the purpose of marriage, work and diet is known as the caste system.
(ii) The social structure of India is based upon the caste system. All societies have some kind of social inequality and some form of division of labour, but the Indian caste system is an extreme form of division of labour based on birth.
(iii) Although in most societies, occupations are passed on from one generation to another, but in India, it is different from other societies as in this system hereditary occupational division was sanctioned by rituals.
(iv) The Indian caste system was very rigid. Members of the same caste group were supposed to form a social community that practiced the same or similar occupation, married within the caste group, and did not eat with members from other caste groups.
(v) Indian caste system continues to be closely linked to economic status.

2. **Mention any positive role of caste in politics.**

OR

Describe the positive and negative aspects of relationship between caste and politics

Ans. (i) In some situations, expression of caste differences in politics gives many disadvantaged communities the space to demand their share of power.
(ii) In this sense, caste politics has helped people from the Dalits and the OBC castes to gain better access to decision making.
(iii) Several political and non-political organisations have been demanding and agitating for the end of discrimination against particular castes, for more dignity and more access to land, resources and opportunities.

Negative :

(i) It disrupts social harmony.
(ii) It can divert attention from other pressing issues like poverty, corruption, etc.

3. **Why is the idea of communal politics fundamentally flawed ?**

Ans. Most of these beliefs are fundamentally not true. People of one religion do not have the same interests and aspirations in most of the contexts. Every individual has his/her own choices, roles, positions and identities. There are many voices inside every community. All these voices have a right to be heard. Therefore, any attempt to bring all followers of one religion together in contexts other than religion is bound to suppress many voices within that community.

4. **What are Feminist Movements? What were their major demands ?**

OR

What was the Feminist Movement? Explain the political demands of the Feminist Movement in India.

Ans. These are the movements which are organised by various women organisations to create equality for women in personal and family life.
(i) These feminist movements demand equal rights for women in all spheres of life.
(ii) There were agitations in different countries for the extension of voting rights to women.
(iii) The agitations demanded enhancing the political and legal status of women.
(iv) The movements also demanded in improving the educational and career opportunities for the women.

5. Explain the relationship between religion and politics.

OR

How are religious differences expressed in politics ?

Ans. (i) **Views of Gandhiji :** Gandhiji used to say that religion can never be separated from politics. What he meant by religion was not any particular religion like Hinduism or Islam, but the moral values that are there in all religions. According to him, politics must be guided by ethics drawn from all religions.

(ii) **Views of Human rights groups :** Human rights groups in our country have argued that most of the victims of communal riots in our country are people from religious minorities. They have demanded that the government should take special steps to protect religious minorities.

(iii) **Women's Movements :** Women's movements have argued that family laws of all religions discriminate against women. So they have demanded that the government should change these laws to make them more equitable.

6. Name the movements which agitate for women's rights. How have these movements helped in improving women's conditions ?

Ans. Feminist Movements.

(i) Political expression of gender division and political mobilisation on this question helped to improve the women's role in public life.

(ii) Now, women are working in occupations such as scientists, doctors, engineers, lawyers, managers, and college and university teachers which were earlier not Ans. considered suitable for women.

(iii) In some parts of the world, for example, (») By reserving some seats in the Lok Sabha in the Scandinavian countries such as Sweden, Norway and Finland, the participation of women in public life is very high.

7. Mention any four steps which can be undertaken to improve the women's representation in politics.

OR

Suggest any three steps to improve the women's participation in politics.

Ans. (i) To make it legally binding to have a fair proportion of women in the elected bodies

(ii) By reserving some seats in the Lok Sabha and the State Assemblies for women.

(iii) Political parties should also give due representation to women members.

(iv) By raising the literacy rate.

8. Explain three features of the model of a secular state of India.

Answer:

The concept of a secular state in India purports equal treatment all religions and to be officially neutral in the matters of religion.

The following are the features which make India a secular state.

- Unlike Christianity in America or Buddhism in Sri Lanka, India does not purport to or give special recognition to any religion. The Constitution of India has nowhere prescribed a particular religion.
- All Citizens of India and all communities and sects in India have been given freedom to practice, profess and propagate any religion under the Fundamental rights of the Constitution.
- The Constitution of India has clearly put a ban on any discrimination on the ground of religion. It provides for equal opportunity for all individuals irrespective of their religion.

9. Explain how the proper representation of women in legislature can solve the problem of gender-based discrimination in India.

Answer:

The proper representation of women in legislature can solve the problem of gender-based discrimination in the following ways.

- Proper representation of women in legislature will result in more women-friendly laws.
- Better policing will help in greater security for women and better law enforcement.
- Seeing women in positions of decision-making is reassuring women empowerment, which helps to improve their image.

10. Mention any three constitutional provisions that make India a secular state.

Answer:

The constitutional provisions which make India a ‘secular state’ are as follows.

- The Constitution of India does not give special recognition to any religion and there is no state religion in India, unlike, Christianity in America, and Buddhism in Sri Lanka.
- All individuals and communities have been given freedom to practice, profess and propagate any religion.
- The Constitution of India has put a ban on any discrimination on the grounds of religion.
- According to the constitution, the state cannot intervene in the matters of religion to promote religious equality.

11. Is the caste system coming to an end in India? Give arguments in support of your answer.

Answer:

No, I do not think that the caste system is coming to an end in India. From time immemorial, the caste system has been an inseparable part of Indian society and has been deeply rooted in our culture. It is entrenched in the society and brings about discrimination. Even though a number of government policies have been implemented, the caste system has not been completely eradicated.

The following are the instances to support this argument.

- Even though the constitution provides for various provisions for marrying outside the caste, most people in India still marry in their caste.
- Citizens of the country, while casting their votes, usually vote for a candidate of their own caste, rather than any other caste irrespective of the credibility of the candidate.
- Political parties keep in mind the caste composition of the electorate before choosing a candidate to represent their party so as to get necessary support for benefiting their election spree.
- Untouchability still has not completely eradicated from the Indian society even though the constitution prohibits any kind of untouchability.

12. Suggest any two measures to check casteism in India.

Answer:

The following are the two measures to check casteism in India.

- **Spread of education:** Education upgrades one’s level of thinking and helps in eradicating the misconceptions of one’s mind. All possible steps should be taken to educate the masses.
- **Economic equality:** Inequality in the economic life creates the feeling of superiority and inferiority among the members of different caste groups. Steps need to be taken to maintain economic equality of all castes.
- **Abolition of Reservation Policy:** Reservation in government job, education and other sectors creates conflicting attitude among the members of two different castes. When the people of higher castes having adequate educational qualification are deprived of all facilities, they revolt against the lower caste people.
- **Political reforms:** Political leaders and parties based on caste should be banned from the political horizon.
- The name and aim of educational institutions referring to castes need to be given up.

13. How can religion be used in politics in a positive manner? Express your view point.

Answer:

Politics and religion can be a deadly combination if not used wisely. It should be for the good of the people rather than used as a weapon to settle scores. **Religion can be used in politics in a positive manner in the following ways.**

- Politics should be guided by the ethics and values of religion.
- We should raise our demands as a religious community but not at the cost of other religions.
- Political leaders should also ensure that religion is not used as a medium of oppression and discrimination. They should have equal response to different religious conflicts or demands.

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [5 MARKS]

14. Why are caste barriers breaking down in India? Explain any five reasons.

Answer:

In the recent decades, cast barriers have been breaking down in India because of the following reasons.

- It has been the efforts of social reformers that people have realised the caste based differences had no logic.
- The economic development, large scale urbanisation and occupational mobility has further erased the caste barriers.
- Spread of literacy and education has also played a great role in upgrading the beliefs and ideologies of the people.
- Complete eradication of landlordism has resulted in the decline of caste system.
- The constitutional provision of prohibiting caste based discriminations in every form and providing equal opportunities to all has reversed the caste injustices.

15. Describe three advantages and two disadvantages of the political expression of caste differences.

Answer:

The following are the advantages of the political expression of caste differences.

- In the present times, several political and non-political organisations have fought discrimination against particular castes, for more dignity and more access to land, resources and opportunities for the people from lower caste, who were not given equal status and opportunity like the upper caste people.
- In some situations, expression of caste differences in politics gives many disadvantaged communities the space to demand their share of power. Usually it is seen that the disadvantaged communities are not able to exercise their rights but because of political representation of such caste differences, the oppressed people get to put forward their rights to get what they deserve.
- **The following are the disadvantages of the political expression of caste differences.**
- In case of religion, politics based on caste identity alone is not very healthy in democracy. It can divert attention from other pressing issues such as poverty, development and corruption. Because caste is not the only issue that is causing a hindrance in the society there are various issues that need to be given equal importance.
- In some cases, caste differences lead to caste division, which further leads to violence and tension among the people of different caste and that might lead to outburst of riots in the society.

16. “Women in the Indian society still suffer from discrimination and oppression.” Support the statement with suitable examples.

OR

Describe any five ways in which women in India are still discriminated against and oppressed.

OR

What are the problems faced by Indian women which affect their social status? Explain any five.

OR

Describe any four aspects of life in which women are discriminated against in Indian society.

OR

Explain any five aspects of our day-to-day life in which women are discriminated against in India.

Answer:

The following points sum up how women are still discriminated against and oppressed in India.

- **Literacy rate:** The first and foremost discrimination is in the field of education where the literacy rate among women is only 66 per cent when compared to a high 82 per cent in males. Even otherwise, parents prefer educating spending their resources of education of a male child rather than a female child.
- **Sex ratio:** The sex ratio in India is as low as 940 females per 1000 males. The proportion of women as compared to men is very low. A major reason behind this is that parents prefer having a male child over a female child keeping in view the future perspective.
- **Unpaid work:** The proportion of highly-paid women is very less when compared to highly-paid men. Though on an average, Indian women work one hour more than men every day but they are not equally paid and thus their work is also not often valued as much as that of men.
- **Domestic violence:** Women every day in Indian society are harassed, exploited, and subjected to all sorts of violence behind the closed doors. Both in urban and rural areas, domestic violence is one of the most prominent form of discrimination faced by women. Many cases of domestic violence and dowry deaths are reported in the media every day.
- **Female foeticide:** In India, a male child is considered a blessing and a female child is considered a bane. This has come to an extent where the female child is killed in the womb of the mother. This killing of foetus is known as foeticide. Female foeticide is prevalent in both urban and rural areas.

17. Explain any five reasons for the declining caste system in India.

Answer:

The following are the five reasons for the declining caste system in India.

- Growth of literacy and education: After industrialisation the literacy rate has increased.
- Occupational mobility: Due to occupational mobility, the new generation takes up occupations other than those practised by their ancestors.
- Large-scale urbanisation: Shift of people from rural areas to urban areas in search of jobs and better living conditions.
- Efforts made by leaders and reformers: The political leaders and social reformers worked to establish a society in which caste inequalities are absent.
- Economic development: Adoption of newer technologies from agriculture-based to industry-based economy and general improvement in living standards.

18. What is communalism ? What are the major beliefs of communal people ?

Ans. Communalism is a situation when a particular community tries to promote its own interest at the cost of other communities.

Communal politics is based on the idea that religion is the principal basis of social community.

Communalism involves thinking along the following lines:

- The followers of a particular religion must belong to one community.
- Their fundamental interests should be the same. Any difference that they may have is irrelevant or trivial for community life.
- Communalism also follows that people who follow different religions cannot belong to the same

social community. If the followers of different religions have some commonalities, these are superficial and immaterial. Their interests are bound to be different and involve a conflict.

• Sometimes, communalism leads to the belief that people belonging to different religions cannot live as equal citizens within one nation. Either one of them has to dominate the rest, or they have to form different nations.

19. State any four provisions of the Indian Constitution which makes it a secular state.

Ans. (i) No official religion : There is no official religion of the Indian state. Unlike the status of Buddhism in Sri Lanka, Islam in Pakistan and Hinduism in Nepal, our Constitution does not give a special status to any religion.

(ii) Fundamental Rights : Under the Right To Freedom of Religion, our Constitution provides to all citizens freedom to profess, practice and propagate any religion, or not to follow any.

Under the Cultural and Educational Right, our Constitution prohibits discrimination on grounds of religion.

(iii) Equality : The Constitution allows the state to intervene in the matters of religion in order to ensure equality within religious communities. To ensure equality, untouchability has been banned.

(iv) Intervention of the state within religious communities : The Constitution allows the state to intervene in the matters of religion in order to ensure equality within the different religious communities.

20. “The focus on caste in politics can sometimes give an impression that elections are all about caste and nothing else. That is far from true.” Explain by giving examples.

Ans. (i) Constituencies are a mixture of people belonging to different castes :

No parliamentary constituency in the country has a clear majority of one single caste. So, every candidate and party needs to win the confidence of more than one caste and community to win elections.

(ii) Different choices even within caste : No party wins the votes of all the voters of a caste or community because even within the community, people have different choices. When people say that a caste is a ‘vote bank’ of one party, it usually means that about two-thirds of the voters of that community.

(iii) Hunt for a dominating caste : Most of the political parties may put up candidates from the majority caste. But even this cannot guarantee their victory because some voters have more than one candidate from their castes, while many voters have no candidate from their castes.

History of elections : According to history of Indian elections, the ruling party and the sitting Member of the Parliament (MP) or Member of the Legislative Assembly (MLA) frequently lose elections in our country. This proves that though casteism and communalism play a major role in politics, but elections are not about caste and communalism.

21. What forms can caste take in politics ?

OR

Explain any four forms of casteism in Indian Politics.

OR

Explain the role of caste in Indian politics.

OR

Explain any three forms of caste politics in India.

Ans. (i) While choosing candidates : When parties choose candidates in elections, they keep in mind the caste composition of the electorate, and nominate candidates from different castes so as to get necessary support to win elections. (

(ii) While forming a government : When the governments are formed, political parties usually take care that representatives of different castes and tribes find a place in it.

(iii) While campaigning : Political parties and candidates in elections make appeals to people to give them their votes on the basis of caste. Some political parties are known to favour some

castes, and are seen as their representatives. .

(iv) Universal adult franchise and the principle of one-person-one-vote, has compelled the political leaders to raise the caste-based issues during elections. They do so to mobilise and secure political support. It also brought new consciousness among the people of castes that were hitherto treated as inferior and low.

22. **'Politics too influences the caste system.' Explain.**

OR

In what ways does politics influence caste system?

OR

How caste is politicised? Explain any three points.

Ans. Politics too influences the caste system and caste identities by bringing them into the political arena. Thus, it is not politics that gets caste-ridden, it is the caste that gets politicised. Politics in caste normally takes the following forms :

- (i) Wide base : Each caste tries to widen its base to gain majority. Each caste group tries to become bigger by incorporating within it, the neighbouring castes or sub-castes which were earlier excluded from it.
- (ii) Coalition : Various caste groups are required to enter into a coalition with other castes or communities, and thus enter into a dialogue and negotiation. This strengthens the basic structure of democracy.
- (iii) New groups : New kinds of caste groups have come up in the political arena like 'backward' and 'forward' caste groups.

23. **What forms does communalism take in politics?**

OR

Define communalism as an ideology. Explain the forms of communalism in politics.

Answer:

Communalism is a strong sense of belonging to particular community especially a religious community, which often leads to extreme behavior or violence towards others. It cannot tolerate and respect people belonging to different religious communities.

There are different forms of communalism in politics as follows.

- **Communalism in everyday beliefs:** It is the most common form of communalism and can be in the form of religious prejudices, stereotypes of religious communities and belief that one religion is superior to other religions.
- **Communalism as Majoritarian Dominance and Political Dominance:** A communal mind often leads to quest for political dominance of one's own religious community. For people belonging to the majority community this comes out as 'Majoritarian dominance' for those belonging to the minority community, it can take form of a desire to form a separate political unit.
- **Communalism as political mobalisation:** Political mobalisation on religious lines is another frequent form of communalism. This involves the use of sacred symbols, emotional appeals and plain fear in order to bring the followers of one religion together in political arena.
- **Communalism in the form of communal violence:** Sometimes, communalism takes its most ugly form of communal violence, riots and massacre. For instance, India and Pakistan suffered some of the worst communal riots at the time of the partition.
To sum up, it can be said that communalism leads to the belief that people belonging to different religions cannot live as equal citizens within one nation. Either one of them has to dominate the rest or they have to form different nations.

POLITICAL PARTIES

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [3 MARKS]

1. How do political parties shape public opinion? Explain with three examples.

Answer:

Political parties shape public opinion in the following ways.

- They highlight and raise issues.
- Parties have lakhs of members spread all over the country. Often pressure groups are an extension of political parties, among different sections of the society. They help in taking up issues and forming public opinion.
- Sometimes, parties launch movements for solving the problems faced by people. Often the public opinion develops on the same lines that the parties take.

2. Name the national political party which gets inspiration from India's ancient culture and values. Mention four features of that party.

Answer:

Bharatiya Janata Party gets its inspiration from India's ancient culture and values. Four features of Bharatiya Janata Party are as follows.

- It wants full territorial and political integration of Jammu and Kashmir with India.
- It wants a uniform civil code for all people living in the country, irrespective of religion.
- It wants a ban on religious conversions.
- Hindutva or cultural nationalism is an important element in its conception of politics.

3. Name the national political party which espouses secularism and welfare of weaker sections and minorities. Mention any four features of that party.

Answer:

National Congress Party, formed in 1999, espouses secularism and welfare of weaker sections and minorities. Four features of this party are as follows:

- It wants high offices in the government to be confined to natural-born citizens of the country.
- It stands for social justice, federalism and equity.
- It is a major party in Maharashtra with a significant presence in Meghalaya, Manipur and Assam.
- In Maharashtra, it is a coalition partner in alliance with the Congress.
- It is a member of the United Progressive Alliance since 2004.

4. Name the national political party which draws inspiration from the ideas and teachings of Sahu Maharaj. Mention any four features of that party.

Answer:

The national political party which draws inspiration from the ideas and teachings of Sahu Maharaj is Bahujan Samaj Party. Four features of this party are as follows.

- It wants to secure the interest and welfare of the dalits and oppressed classes.
- It seeks to represent and secure power for the bahujan samaj which includes dalits, adivasis, OBCs and religious minorities.
- It draws inspiration from the ideas and teachings of Mahatma Phule, Periyar, Ramaswami Naicker and Dr Ambedkar.
- Its main base is in Uttar Pradesh.

5. What is meant by a political party? Describe the three components of a political party.

Answer:

A political party is a political association or a voluntary group of people who come together to contest elections and hold political power in the government. They agree on some policies and

programmes. Political parties are necessary for democracy. They provide an important two-way link between the government and the people. They also unite and aggregate like-minded people from diverse backgrounds and religions to form a wide coalition of people and provide unity in diversity.

For the three components of a political party, refer to answer 8.

6. State the conditions laid down by the Election Commission to recognise a state party and a national party.

Answer:

- A party that secures at least six per cent of the total votes in an election to the legislative assembly of a state and wins at least two seats is recognised as a state party.
- A party that secures at least six per cent of the total votes in lok sabha elections or assembly elections in four states and wins at least four seats in the lok sabha is recognised as a national party.

7. Name the six national political parties of India in chronological order.

Answer:

The following are the six national political parties of India in chronological order.

- Indian National Congress (1885) .
- Communist Party of India (1925)
- Communist Party of India-Marxist (1964)
- Bhartiya Janata Party (1980)
- Bahujan Samaj Party (1984)
- National Congress Party (1999)

8. Name any three national political parties along with their symbols.

Answer:

- Indian National Congress—symbol: hand, palm facing the people
- Bhartiya Janata Party—symbol: a lotus
- Bahujan Samaj Party—symbol: an elephant

9. Name any six regional political parties of the four southern states of India.

Answer:

- The four southern states with regional political parties are as follows.
- Kerala: Indian Federal Democratic Party and Kerala Congress (Mani)
- Tamil Nadu: All India Anna DMK and Dravida Munnetra Kazhagam
- Andhra Pradesh: Telugu Desam Party
- Karnataka: Janata Dal (Secular)

10. Name the regional political parties predominant in Punjab, Haryana and Uttarakhand respectively with their symbols

Answer:

The regional political parties predominant in:

- Punjab—Shiromani Akali Dal, symbol: scales
- Haryana—Indian National Lok Dal, symbol: a pair of spectacles
- Uttarakhand—Uttarakhand Kranti Dal, symbol: chair

11. Name the regional political parties predominant in Jharkhand, Maharashtra and Orissa, respectively with their symbols.

Answer:

- The regional political parties predominant in:
- Jharkhand—Jharkhand Mukti Morcha, symbol: bow and arrow
- Maharashtra—Shiv Sena, symbol: bow and arrow
- Orissa—Biju Janata Dal, symbol: conch

12. Name the regional political parties predominant in Sikkim, Nagaland and Manipur, respectively with their symbols.

Answer:

- The regional political parties predominant in:
- Sikkim—Sikkim Democratic Front, symbol: an umbrella
- Nagaland—Nagaland People's Front, symbol: a cock
- Manipur—Manipur People's Party, symbol: a cycle

13. What is a multiparty system? Why has India adopted a multiparty system? Explain

Answer:

A multiparty system is a political system in which several parties contest the election to hold political power. In this system, there is a chance of two or more parties coming to power. This system also advocates coalition government and alliance politics. India adopted a multiparty system because of the following reasons.

- India is blessed with tremendous social and geographical diversity. This diversity cannot be easily accommodated in one or two political parties.
- Because of multiparty system, variety of interests and opinions enjoy political representation.

14. 'Lack of internal democracy within parties is the major challenge to political parties all over the world.' Analyse the statement,

Answer:

Lack of internal democracy within political parties is a major challenge to political parties all over the world. This statement can be analysed giving the following reasons.

- It is a tendency among political parties to concentrate power in the hands of one or few top leaders.
- Parties do not often keep membership registers and do not hold organizational meetings and do not conduct internal elections regularly.
- Sufficient information on what happens inside the party is not provided to the ordinary members of the party.
- In such a situation, personal loyalty to the leader becomes more important.

15. 'Dynamic succession is one of the most serious challenges before the political parties.'

Analyse the statement.

Answer:

The challenge of dynamic succession is undoubtedly one of the most serious challenges before the political parties. The statement can be analysed giving the following arguments.

- Most parties do not practice open and transparent procedures, hence, there are very few opportunities for an ordinary worker to rise to the top in a party.
- Top leaders favour people close to them or even their family members. In many parties, the top positions are always controlled by members of one family.
- This is bad for democracy because people without sufficient experience or popular support are able to enjoy positions of power.

16. How do money and muscle power play an important role in elections? Explain.

Answer:

Ans. Nowadays elections are focused mainly on winning at any cost so parties try to use shortcuts like money and muscle power.

- They try to select or nominate those candidates who can raise money or provide muscle power.
- Sometimes, wealthy people and big companies also get involved in the democratic politics for their own interest and influence decision-making process.
- In many cases, candidates with criminal records, who can win elections, are supported.

17. “Serious efforts were made by the legal organisations to reform political parties in India.”

Support the statement.

Answer:

Serious efforts were made by the legal organisations to reform political parties in India. The following points support the statement.

- The Supreme Court has made it mandatory for the candidates contesting elections to produce an affidavit giving details of property and cases pending against them. It is hoped that this will reduce the influence of money and muscle power in elections.
- Anti-defection law has been passed by amending the constitution to prevent elected MLAs and MPs from changing their parties.
- The Election Commission has made it mandatory for the political parties to hold organisational elections and file their income tax returns.

18. Describe any three main features of a two-party system

Answer:

Three main features of a two-party system are as follows.

- Power usually changes between two parties, while other political parties may exist.
- The party that wins the majority forms the government, while the other forms the major opposition.
- Decision-making and implementation is prompt and quick.
- Such a system gives a strong and good opposition.

19. What is meant by a national political party? State the conditions required to be a national political party.

Answer:

A national political party is a party that is present in several or all units of the federation. In other words, it is a country-wide party. It has its units in various states. By and large, all these units follow the same policies. The following are the conditions required for a party to become a national party.

- A party has to secure at least six per cent of total votes polled in the Lok Sabha elections or Assembly elections in four states.
- It has to win at least four seats in the Lok Sabha to be recognised as a national party

20. ‘Nearly every one of the state parties wants to get an opportunity to be part of one or the other national-level coalition.’ Support the statement with arguments

Answer:

Nearly every one of the state parties wants to get an opportunity to be part of one or the other national level coalition because:

- the members of the state party get a chance of being included in the cabinet or the council of ministers.
- state parties get an opportunity and a platform to express their views and ideology at the national level.
- it helps in strengthening of federalism and democracy, and thus bringing diversity in the parliament.

21. What is meant by a regional party? State the conditions required to be recognised as a regional political party.

Answer:

A regional party, also called a state party, is a political party which takes care of regional concerns and state's interests only. It happens to have succeeded only in some states units of the federation.

The following are the conditions required for a party to be recognised as a regional party.

- A party has to secure at least six per cent of the total votes polled in the election to the legislative assembly of a state.
- It has to win at least two seats in the election to the legislative assembly of a state to be recognised as a state or regional party.

22. Which three challenges do you feel are being faced by political parties in India? Give your opinion.

Answer:

As political parties are the essence of democracy, it is natural that they are often blamed for the failure of any policy or the working of democracy. Mostly, political parties face the following challenges in their working area.

- Lack of internal democracy: Political parties face the problem of internal democracy, which implies that:
 - parties do not hold organisational meetings.
 - they do not conduct regular internal elections.
 - membership of the party members is not fairly registered.
 - all the members, except top leaders, are not included in the decision-making process.
- Dynastic succession:
 - Another challenge is that in most of the political parties, the top posts are always controlled by the members of one family, which is very unfair to other members.
- Since open and transparent functioning is lacking, there are very few chances for an ordinary worker to rise to the top.
- Money and muscle power: The third challenge is the growing role of money and muscle power.
 - Nowadays, elections are focussed mainly on winning at any cost, so parties try to use short-cuts like using money and muscle power.
 - They try to select or nominate those candidates who can raise money or provide muscle power.
 - Sometimes, wealthy people and big companies also get involved in the democratic politics for their own interest and try to influence the decision-making process.
 - In some cases, parties support criminals who can win elections.
- Absence of a meaningful choice:
 - In the present political scenario, there is no ideological difference among the political parties, so they do not provide a meaningful choice to voters.
 - Those voters, who really want a change in the government and its policies, never get any positive option. For instance, in India, where we have multi-party system, the differences between the parties over the economic matters have reduced.
 - Also, people cannot even elect different leaders because the same set of leaders keep shifting from one party to another. (any three)

23. Analyse the three components of a political party.

Answer:

The following are the three elements of a political party.

- The leaders: The leaders contest elections and, if they win, perform the administrative jobs.
- The active members: The active members attend party meetings and are close to the party leaders. They can be called the assistants of the leaders.
- The followers: The followers are the dedicated workers of the party. They work under the able guidance of the active members.

24. What is a political party? State any two points of ideology of Bhartiya Janata Party.

Answer:

A political party is an association or a voluntary group of people who come together to contest

election and hold power in the government. They agree on some policies and programmes. The ideology of Bhartiya Janata Party is as follows.

- It wants full territorial and political integration of Jammu and Kashmir with India.
- It wants to build a strong and modern India by drawing inspiration from India's ancient culture and values.
- It wants a uniform civil code for all people living in the country, irrespective of religion.
- It wants religious conversions to be banned in India. (any three)

25. 'No party system is ideal for all countries and all situations.' Justify the statement with arguments.

Answer:

No party system is ideal for all countries and all situations. This statement can be justified giving the following arguments.

- A one-party system cannot be considered a good option because the voters do not have any choice and it is not a democratic option.
- A two-party system cannot be considered ideal for a country because in this system, power usually shifts from one party to the other. Several other parties with better programmes and policies may exist, contest elections and win a few seats, but only the two party have serious chance of forming government.
- A multiparty system also cannot be considered a good option because it often appears messy and leads to political instability. In this system the government is formed by various parties and ideologies coming together which may further raise issues and conflicts.

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [5 MARKS]

26. 'Political parties are a necessary condition for a democracy.' Analyse the statement with examples.

Answer:

In a democratic set-up, political parties are required because without political parties:

- every candidate in the elections will be independent. No promises could be made and the utility of the government formed will remain uncertain.
- no one will be responsible for running the country. Elected representatives will only be accountable to their constituency
- there will be no agency to gather and present different views on various issues to the government.
- no one will be responsible for bringing various representatives together so as to form a responsible government.
- there will be no mechanism to support the government, make policies and justify or oppose them.

27. Suggest and explain any five measures to reform political parties.

Answer:

The following reforms could be suggested in order to strengthen parties so that they perform their functions well.

- Regulation of party's internal affairs: A law should be made to regulate the internal affairs of political parties. It should be made compulsory for political parties to maintain a register of their members, to follow their own constitution, to have an independent authority, etc.
- State funding: There should be state funding of elections. The government should give money to parties to support their election expenses to avoid corruption.
- Pressure of public opinion: Political parties can be reformed if people put pressure on them. This can be done through petitions, propaganda and agitations. Pressure groups and media play an important role in this.

- Ban on political parties based on religion and caste: The Election Commission should ban the political parties which are formed on the basis of religion and caste.
- Ensure women participation: It should be made mandatory for all political parties to allot one-third of the tickets to women to ensure their decisive voice in decision making. If the above-mentioned suggestions are taken into consideration, it can be ensured that these could lead to some improvement in the working of the political parties.

28. Examine any two institutional amendments made by different institutions to reform political parties and their leaders.

Answer:

The following are the two institutional amendments made by different institutions to reform political parties and their leaders.

- Anti-defection law: The anti-defection law was passed to prevent elected MLAs and MPs from changing their parties. It was seen that many MLAs and MPs were changing their parties for personal gains. Now, according to the law, if any MLA or MP changes his/her party, his/her seat in the legislature will be lost. Also, MLAs and MPs have to accept whatever the party leaders decide.
- Affidavit: To reduce the influence of money and muscle power (criminals), an order has been passed by the Supreme Court making it mandatory for every candidate contesting election to file an affidavit giving details of his/her property and criminal records. This system has helped in making a lot of information available to the public. But, we cannot say that this amendment has been successful as it cannot be said that information provided by the candidates is true.
- Mandatory organisational meeting and filing of ITR: An order has been passed by the Election Commission making it mandatory for political parties to hold their organisational elections and file their income tax returns. The parties have started doing this, but sometimes it is only a formality. It is not clear if this step has brought some reform or not. {any two}

29. Describe any five major functions of political parties

Answer:

The following are the various functions political parties perform in a democracy.

- Contest elections: Parties contest elections. In countries like India, top party leaders choose candidates for contesting elections.
- Put forward policies and programmes: Parties put forward different policies and programmes and voters choose from them. Political parties accommodate different views and opinions.
- Play an important role in making laws: Political parties play a decisive role in making laws for a country. Formally, laws are debated and passed in the legislature, but since most of the members belong to a party, they go by the direction of the party leadership, irrespective of their personal opinions.
- Form and run government: To run the government, political parties prepare a council of ministers by recruiting and training the leaders.
- Provide access to government machinery and welfare schemes: Political parties provide people access to government machinery and welfare schemes implemented by governments. For an ordinary citizen, it is easy to approach a local party leader than a government officer.
- Play the role of opposition: The party which loses election plays the role of opposition. Opposition party tries to put checks on the ruling party by constantly criticizing its policies.
- Shape public opinion: One of the most important functions of political parties is that they shape public opinion on relevant issues for the proper functioning of the government and to deepen the concept of democracy

30. ‘About hundred years ago there were few countries that had hardly any political party. Now there are few countries that do not have political parties.’ Examine the statement.

Answer:

The statement has two parts.

- About a hundred years ago, there were few countries that had hardly any political party. It shows that very few countries were democratic countries and if they were not democracies, there was no need for political parties.
 - Now there are few countries that do not have political parties. In the last hundred years many countries became independent from colonial control. After independence, they adopted democratic governments. So there was an increasing necessity for political parties.
- The political parties have become very important in a democratic country because of the following reasons.
- Not having political parties will lead to chaos and turmoil in the society. It will be against democratic principles.
 - Without parties, candidates elected will be independent and will not be able to make policies. They will not be responsible and accountable to the people.
 - The existence of parties in a democracy ensures that a country runs as per its policies and ideologies and have a government which is answerable to the people.

31. How is dynastic succession a major challenge for political parties in India? Explain.

Answer:

The challenge of dynastic succession is undoubtedly a major challenge for political parties in India. The following points explain this.

- Usually, an ordinary worker does not rise to the top positions in a party because the functioning of most political parties is not transparent.
- Most of the top leaders favour and choose members of their families. This is unfair to other members.
- The top positions are always controlled by members of one family. This is unhealthy for democracy.
- People who are at top levels usually do not have adequate experience, education or popular support.
- The challenge of dynastic succession is related to the challenge of lack of internal democracy. Non-deserving leaders exercise paramount power and make decisions. Those who disagree with the leadership find it difficult to continue in the party.

32. How do state or regional political parties contribute in strengthening federalism and democracy in India? Explain with examples.

Answer:

State and regional political parties contribute in strengthening federalism and democracy in India in the following ways.

- They provide a variety of choice to people as each of them has different agendas and focus on different issues.
 - They provide a platform for different pressure and social groups, and communities to put forward their demands.
 - They help in power sharing by sharing power of government with the help of coalition government.
-

OUTCOMES OF DEMOCRACY

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [1 MARK]

1. How can you say that democracies are based on political equality?

Answer:

Democracies are based on political equality as individuals have equal weight in electing representatives.

2. What is ‘transparency’ in a democracy?

Answer:

Democracy ensures that decision making will be based on norms and procedure. Every citizen has the right and means to examine the process of decision making. This is known as transparency.

3. Why is democracy preferred as the better form of government than dictatorship?

OR

Why is a democratic government better than other alternatives?

Answer:

Democracy is preferred as the better form of government because it ensures people’s rule based on popular consensus and enhances the dignity of the individual.

4. What are the basic elements of democracy in practical sense?

Answer:

The basic elements of democracy are formal constitutions, regular, fair and free elections, political parties and fundamental rights to citizens.

5. What thoughts should be put in to assess the outcome of democracy?

Answer:

The first step towards thinking carefully about the outcome of democracy is to recognise that democracy is a just form of government.

6. What should be the basic outcome of democracy?

Answer:

The most basic outcome of democracy should be that it produces an accountable, responsive and legitimate government.

7. Why are decisions delayed in democracy?

Answer:

Decisions are delayed in democracy because democratic governments are based on the idea of deliberation and negotiation.

8. What do democracies ensure regarding decision-making?

Answer:

Democracies ensure that decision-making is based on norms and procedures.

9. Is a democratic government efficient and effective? How?

Answer:

Yes, a democratic government, to some extent, is efficient and effective as it produces an accountable government and develops a mechanism for citizens to take part in decision-making.

10. Democracy is not free from corruption. Is it true?

Answer:

There is no denying the fact the democracy is not free from corruption but, it is only in a democracy that people can openly expose this evil and ask for its elimination.

11. List any two factors on which economic development depends.

Answer:

- Economic development depends on several factors like
- (a) country's population size
 - (b) global situation
 - (c) cooperation from other countries
 - (d) economic priorities (any two)

12. Do democracies appear to be successful in reducing economic inequalities?

Answer:

In actual life, democracies do not appear to be very successful in reducing economic inequalities.

13. In what ways are democracies different from each other?

Answer:

In spite of common basic elements, democracies are different from each other in terms of social situation, economic achievements and cultures.

14. 'Democracy cannot solve all economic and social problems but still it is perceived.' Why?

Answer:

Not only democracy but no other form of government can fully solve all economic and social problems, however, it is democracy which creates situations that help citizens to solve their social and economic problems.

15. Which country is suffering from adverse form of economic inequality?

Answer:

Bangladesh is suffering from the adverse effect of economic inequality, i.e. poverty, as more than half of its population lives in poverty.

16. Trace any two provisions of Indian government to eradicate caste inequalities.

Answer:

The following are the two provisions of Indian government to eradicate caste inequalities.

- (a) Legal and moral rights have been granted to fight for equal status.
- (b) The practice of untouchability has been banned.

17. List two valid points which promote dignity of women in a democratic government.

Answer:

Two valid points which promote dignity of women in a democratic government are as follows.

- (a) Women empowerment through reservation and freedom
- (b) Freedom to launch movements against ill practices

18. List the countries which have the most stable democracies in the world.

Answer:

The United States, Canada and Switzerland have the most stable democracies because there is 100 per cent literacy and they have very successful welfare schemes for all citizens.

19. Name any two basic constituents of democracy.

Answer:

The basic constituents or aspects of democracy are:

- (a) Political: government by consent.
- (b) Social: social and economic equality.
- (c) Economic: equal opportunity, equal status and equal distribution of income. (any two)

20. What is the dilemma regarding the practical aspect of democracy?

Answer:

The main dilemma regarding the practical aspect of democracy is that democracy is seen to be good in principle but felt to be not so good in practice.

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [3 MARKS]

21. The ideals, principles and norms of democracy require certain conditions to be implemented. Justify the statement.

Answer:

The ideals, principles and norms of democracy require certain conditions to be implemented. This statement can be justified giving the following arguments.

- (a) Democracy is not simply rule by majority opinion. The majority always needs to work with the minority.
- (b) It is also necessary that rule by majority does not become rule by majority community in terms of religion, race, etc.
- (c) Democracy remains democracy only as long as every citizen has a chance of being in majority at some point of time.

22. How do democratic governments ensure transparency? Explain any three points.

Answer:

- Democracy ensures that decision-making will be based on norms and procedures. So a citizen, who wants to know if a decision was taken through the correct procedures, can find out as democracy guarantees to the citizens the right and the means to examine the process of decision-making.
- In a democracy people have the right to choose their rulers and people will have control over them. Whenever possible and necessary, citizens should be able to participate in decision-making that affects them all. Thus it ensures transparency by producing a government that is accountable to the citizens and is responsive to their needs and expectations.
- It is right to expect democracy to produce a government that follows procedures and is accountable to people. To do so, the democratic government develops mechanisms for citizens—regular, free and fair elections, open public debate on major policies and legislations and citizens' right to information about the government and its functioning.

23. What are the differences between democracy and dictatorship in the decision making process?

Answer:

Democracy	Dictatorship
(i) Based on the idea of deliberation and negotiation. Thus, the necessary delay in implementation.	(i) Do not have to bother about majorities and/or public opinion, thus can be quick and efficient in decision-making.
(ii) Decisions are acceptable to people and are more effective.	(ii) May take decisions not accepted by the people.
(iii) A citizen has the right and the means to examine the process of decision-making. There is transparency.	(iii) Transparency is missing from a non-democratic form of government. There is no accountability of the government to the people.

24. “An ideal government would not only keep itself away from corruption but also make fighting corruption and black money a top priority”. Justify the statement.

Answer:

The values attached to the above statement signify the following practices and institutions:

- Regular free and fair elections, open public debate on major policies and legislation and citizens' right to information about the government and its functions.
- An ideal government in a democracy follows procedures and is accountable to the people.
- A citizen has the right and the means to examine the process of decision making. This is known as transparency.

- An ideal government is attentive and responsive to the needs and expectations of the people and is largely free of corruption as it is a legitimate government. It is peoples own government.

25. ‘Democracy is seen to be good in principle, but felt, to be not so good in practice.’ Justify the statement with suitable arguments.

Answer:

If we look at some of the democratic policies being implemented in more than one hundred countries of the world, democracy seems to be good. For example, having a formal Constitution, holding regular elections, guaranteeing the citizens certain rights, working for the welfare of the people, etc. make us advocate that democracy is good.

But if we look in terms of social situations, their economic achievements and varied cultures, we find a very big difference in most of the democracies. The vast economic disparities, social injustice based on discrimination, standard of life, sex discrimination, etc. create many doubts about the merits of democracy. Whenever some of our expectations are not met, we start blaming the idea of democracy. Since democracy is a form of government, it can only create conditions for achieving our goals if they are reasonable.

26. How is democracy accountable and responsive to the needs and expectations of the citizens?

Analyse.

Answer: A democracy is concerned with ensuring that people have the right to choose their rulers and have control over the rulers:

- Whenever possible and necessary, citizens should be able to participate in decision-making in a democracy.
- Democracy ensures that decision-making is based on norms and procedures. A citizen has the right and the means to examine the process of decision-making. Thus democracy entails transparency.
- For a democracy to produce an accountable, responsive and legitimate government, it must ensure the following:
 - Regular, free and fair elections.
 - Open public debate on major policies and legislations.
 - Citizens’ right to be informed about government policies.
 - A government free from corruption.

27. “Democratic government is legitimate government?” Support the statement with arguments.

Answer: Democratic government is a legitimate government. It may be slow, less efficient, not always very responsive or clean. But a democratic government is peoples’ own government. That is why there is an overwhelming support for the idea of democracy all over the world. People’s wish to be ruled by representatives elected by them. As a democratic government is peoples’ own government, they believe that democracy is suitable for their country as it is a legitimate government. Democracy’s ability to generate its own support is itself an outcome that cannot be ignored.

28. “Democracy accommodates social diversities.” Support the statement with examples.

Answer: “Democracy accommodates social diversities” in the following ways:

- Democracies develop a procedure to conduct their competition. This reduces the possibility of these tensions becoming explosive or violent.
- No society can fully and permanently resolve conflicts among different groups. But we can certainly learn to respect these differences and can evolve mechanism to negotiate these differences.
- Example, Belgium has successfully negotiated differences among ethnic population. This reduces the possibility of tensions.

- Ability to handle social differences, divisions and conflicts is thus a definite plus point of democratic regimes.

29. Analyse any three values that make democracy better.

Answer: We feel that democracy is a better form of government than any other form of government because:

- Democracy promotes equality among citizens.
- It enhances dignity of individual. It promotes dignity of women and strengthens the claims of the disadvantaged.
- It improves the quality of decision making. There is transparency in a democracy.
- It provides methods to resolve conflicts.
- Democracy allows room to correct mistakes.

30. On the basis of which values will it be a fair expectation that democracy should produce a harmonious social life? Explain.

Answer: No society can fully and permanently resolve conflicts among different groups. But we can certainly learn to respect these differences and evolve a mechanism to negotiate the differences. Belgium is an example of how successfully differences were negotiated among ethnic groups. Therefore, democracy is best suited to accommodate various social divisions as it usually develops a procedure to conduct their competition. But the example of Sri Lanka shows how distrust between two communities turned into widespread conflict. Thus, a democracy must fulfil the following conditions and be based on these values in order to achieve a harmonious social life:-

- Majority and minority opinions are not permanent. Democracy is not simply rule by majority opinion. The majority needs to work with minority so that government may function to represent the general view.
- Rule by majority does not become rule by majority community in terms of religion or race or linguistic groups, etc.
- Democracy remains democracy so long as every citizen has a chance of being in majority at some point of time. No individual should be debarred from participating in a democracy on the basis of religion, caste, community, creed and other such factors.

31. Why do we feel that democracy is a better form of government than any other form? Explain.

Answer: Democracy is a better form of government than any other form because:

- It is based on the idea of deliberation and negotiation. Thus the necessary delay in implementation.
- Decisions are acceptable to people and are more effective.
- A citizen has the right and the means to examine the process of decision-making. There is transparency in a democracy.
- Democratic government is a legitimate government, people's own government.
- Ability to handle differences, decisions and conflicts is a positive point of democratic regimes.
- Democracy has strengthened the claims of the disadvantaged and discriminated castes for equal status and equal opportunity.

32. Why do we feel that democracy is a better form of government than any other form of government? Explain.

OR

How do you feel that democracy is better than any other form of government? Explain.

OR

"Democracy is more effective than its other alternatives." Justify the statement.

Answer:

We feel that democracy is a better form of government than any other form of government because:

- Democracy promotes equality among citizens.
- It enhances dignity of individual. It promotes dignity of women and strengthens the claims of the disadvantaged.
- It improves the quality of decision making. There is transparency in a democracy.
- It provides methods to resolve conflicts.
- Democracy allows room to correct mistakes.

33. “Most destructive feature of democracy is that its examination never gets over.” Support the statement with appropriate arguments.

Answer:

Suitable arguments:

- As people get some benefits of democracy, they ask for more.
- People always come up with more expectations from the democratic set up.
- They also have complaints against democracy.
- More and more suggestions and complaints by the people is also a testimony to the success of democracy.
- A public expression of dissatisfaction with democracy shows the success of the democratic project.

34. “Democracy is seen to be good in principle but felt to be not so good in practice.” Justify the statement.

Answer:

If we look at some of the democratic policies being implemented in more than one hundred countries of the world, democracy seems to be good. For example, having a formal Constitution, holding regular elections, guaranteeing the citizens certain rights, working for the welfare of the people etc. make us advocate that democracy is good.

But if we look in terms of social situations, their economic achievements and varied cultures, we find a very big difference in most of the democracies. The vast economic disparities, social injustice based on discrimination, standard of life, sex discrimination, etc. create many doubts about the merits of democracy. Whenever some of our expectations are not met, we start blaming the idea of democracy. Since democracy is a form of government, it can only create conditions for achieving our goals if they are reasonable.

35. Examine the political outcomes of democracy.

Answer:

The following are the political outcomes of democracy.

- (a) Democracy produces an accountable, responsible and legitimate government.
- (b) It ensures right to the citizens to choose their leaders and put a check on them.
- (c) It provides procedures and develops mechanism for decision-making.
- (d) If required, people can participate in decision-making either directly or through representatives.
- (e) It promotes regular, free and fair elections.
- (f) It generates its own political support for itself. (any three)

36. Discuss the economic outcomes of democracy.

Answer: The following are the economic outcomes of democracy.

- (a) Rather than economic growth and development, democracies can reduce economic disparities. This is because when a country achieves economic growth, wealth is equitably distributed among all citizens for leading a better life.
- (b) Eradication of poverty by government through programmes and policies is possible only in democracy and not in any other forms of non-democratic governments.
- (c) Though economic growth and development is slow in democracy, it cannot be considered the worst form of government as it has its own positive aspects.

37. Examine the forms of economic inequality in democracy.

Answer: The following are the forms of economic inequality in democracy.

- (a) A small number of ultra-rich enjoy a highly disproportionate share of wealth and incomes.
- (b) The have-nots have very little to depend upon. Their incomes have been declining.
- (c) The poor constitute a larger proportion of the voters and no party would want to lose their votes. Yet democratic governments do not seem to be as keen to address the question of poverty as we expect them to.

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [5 MARKS]

38. "Democracy stands much superior in promoting dignity and freedom of the citizens".

Justify the statement.

Answer: Examples to illustrate that dignity and freedom of citizens are best guaranteed in a democracy:

- (i) Dignity of women. Democracy recognizes dignity of women as a necessary ingredient of society. The one way to ensure that women related problems get adequate attention is to have more women as elected representatives. To achieve this, it is legally binding to have a fair proportion of women in the elected bodies. Panchayati Raj in India has reserved one-third seats in local government bodies for women. In March 2010, the Women's Reservation Bill was passed in the Rajya Sabha ensuring 33% reservation for women in Parliament and State legislative bodies.
- (ii) Democracy has strengthened the claims of disadvantaged and discriminated castes. When governments are formed, political parties usually take care that representatives of different castes and tribes find a place in it. Some political parties are known to favour some castes. Democracy provides for equal status and opportunities for all castes.
- (iii) Democracy transforms people from the status of a subject into that of a citizen. A democracy is concerned with ensuring that people will have the right to choose their rulers and people will have control over the rulers. Whenever possible and necessary, citizens should be able to participate in decision-making that affects them all.
- (iv) A citizen has the right and the means to examine the process of decision-making. There is transparency in a democracy like India. In October 2005, the Right to Information (RTI) law was passed which ensures all its citizens the right to get all the information about the functions of the government departments. In a democracy, people also have the right to complain about its functioning.

39. How is democracy a better form of government in comparison with other forms of governments? Explain.

OR

"There is an overwhelming support for the idea of democracy all over the world." Support the statement.

Answer: Over a hundred countries of the world today claim and practice some kind of democratic politics.

- They have formal constitutions, hold elections, have parties and they guarantee rights of citizens.
- Thus, in most countries, the democracy produces a government that is accountable to the citizens and responsive to the needs and expectations of the citizens.
- No society can fully and permanently resolve conflict among different groups. But we can learn to respect these differences and evolve mechanisms to negotiate them. Democracy is best suited as it develops a procedure to conduct competitions. Belgium is a successful example of negotiating difference among ethnic population.
- Passion for respect and freedom is the basis of democracy and has been achieved in various degrees in various democracies.
- The support for democracy is overwhelming all over the world and is evident from South Asia, where the support exists in countries with democratic as well as undemocratic regimes.

- People wish to be ruled by representatives elected by them as a democratic government is people's own government and makes them believe that it is suitable for their country as it is a legitimate government.

40. Explain the ways in which democracy has succeeded in maintaining dignity and freedom of citizens.

OR

“Democracy stands much superior to any other form of government in promoting dignity and freedom of the individual.” Support the statement with suitable examples.

Answer: The passion of respect and freedom are the basis of democracy:

- Economic disparity in society has been minimized to a great extent.
- In many democracies women were deprived of their right to vote for a long period of time. After long struggle they achieved their right, respect and equal treatment.
- Democracy in India has strengthened the claims of the disadvantaged and discriminated castes for equal states and opportunities, for example, SCs and STs.
- In democracy all adult citizens have the right to vote.
- Democracy evolves a mechanism that takes into account the differences and intrinsic attributes of various ethnic groups. In a democracy majority always needs to work taking into account the interest of the minority so that the minority do not feel alienated.

41. How do democracies accommodate social diversity? Explain with examples.

OR

Explain the conditions in which democracies are able to accommodate social diversities.

OR

“Democracies lead to peaceful and harmonious life among citizens”. Support the statement with suitable examples.

Answer: No society can fully and permanently resolve conflicts among different groups. But we can certainly learn to respect these differences and evolve a mechanism to negotiate the differences. Belgium is an example of how successfully differences were negotiated among ethnic groups. Therefore, democracy is best suited to accommodate various social divisions as it usually develops a procedure to conduct their competition. But the example of Sri Lanka shows how distrust between two communities turned into widespread conflict, and thus a democracy must fulfil the following two conditions in order to achieve a harmonious social life:

- Majority and minority opinions are not permanent. Democracy is not simply rule by majority opinion. The majority needs to work with minority so that government may function to represent the general view.
- Rule by majority does not become rule by majority community in terms of religion or race or linguistic groups, etc.
- Democracy remains democracy so long as every citizen has a chance of being in majority at some point of time. No individual should be debarred from participating in a democracy on the basis of religion, caste, community, creed and other such factors.

42. Explain the role of democratic governments in reducing economic disparities.

OR

“Democracies do not appear to be very successful in reducing economic inequalities”. Examine the statement with examples.

Answer: Over the years, careful evidence has been gathered to see what the relationship of democracy with economic growth and economic inequalities is.

- It is seen that on an average dictatorial regimes have had a slightly better record of economic growth, i. e., 4.34%. But when we compare their record only in poor countries (4.28%), there is no difference.
- There is enough evidence to show that within democracies there can be very high degree of inequalities. In countries like South Africa and Brazil, the top 20 per cent people take away more than 60 per cent of the national income, leaving less than 3 per cent for the bottom 20 per cent population

Perhaps more than development, it is reasonable to expect democracies to reduce economic disparities. Democracies are based on political equality, but despite equality in the political arena there are growing economic inequalities. The poor constitute a large proportion of our voters and no party would like to lose its votes. Yet democratically elected governments do not appear to be keen to tackle the problem of poverty.

Democracies are expected to produce good government, but there is no guarantee that they would also produce development. As evidence shows, the economic development depends on several factors, such as country's size, global situation, co-operation from other countries, economic priorities adopted by the country etc.

43. “A public expression of dissatisfaction with democracy shows the success of democratic project.” Justify the statement.

Answer: A public expression of dissatisfaction with democracy shows the success of democratic project. The statement can be justified by giving the following arguments.

- (a) When citizens show their dissatisfaction, it clearly shows that they are actively taking part in democratic projects, because this system is their own.
- (b) A public expression of dissatisfaction shows that people are not just forcefully following or agreeing with whatever they are told.
- (c) It shows that they are enjoying their freedom and hence they are no more subjects but are responsible citizens.
- (d) Freedom and transformation of people from the status of subjects to that of citizens is the main aim of democracy.
- (e) As people get benefits, they ask for more. This makes democracy better.



Wish You All the Best For Your Future

DEVELOPMENT

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [3 MARKS]

1. **What is meant by economic development? What are the two bases of measuring economic development of a country?**

Answer:

Economic development can be defined as efforts that seek to improve the economic well-being and quality of life for a community by creating and/or retaining jobs and supporting or growing incomes and the tax base. It is the increase in the growth and welfare of people, improvement of quality. In layman's language it is a process, which makes people in general, better off by increasing their

command over goods and services and by increasing the options open to them. The two bases of measuring economic development of a country are as follows.

- HDI (Human Development Index)
- Per capita income

2. **What may be the development for one may be the destruction for the other." Explain the statement with appropriate examples.**

Answer:

Yes, it is true that what may be called development for some may turn out to be destruction for the others.

For example, the Sardar Sarovar dam built over the Narmada river led to a major evacuation of the tribes near the Narmada river and as a result the tribes lost their land and homes. This development of Sardar sarovar dam turned out to be a destruction for the tribes.

Another example, On the border of Madhya Pradesh and Uttar Pradesh, in the Singrauli region, over 200,000 people have been displaced on different occasions. First by the Rihand dam, then by a series of thermal power plants of the National Thermal Power Corporation. Singrauli has illuminated the lives of many in the urban centres, but has seen its natives groping in endless darkness, grappling to overcome the trauma of displacement. So the development in Singrauli led to destruction of its people.

Multinational companies take away the land of the farmers for the construction of industries. It may be beneficial for boosting production but at the same time it causes loss of cultivable land and livelihood of the farmers. Various movements have been launched against the acquisition of land from the farmers.

3. **State the three factors other than human income, that are important in life.**

Answer: Human Development Index is a tool developed by the United Nations to measure and rank countries based on the level of social and economic development. The HDI makes it possible to track changes in development levels from time to time and to compare development levels in different countries. The concept of HDI goes beyond income and growth to cover overall development with the object of improving the conditions of people from all angles.

The organization that measures the HDI is the United Nations.

Three major indicators of the HDI are as follows

- **Health:** Without proper health facilities, no matter how much a country earns, it will not be able to provide basic facilities to its people.
- **Education:** Over the past few decades, education has become an important factor in leading a quality life. So, if the country has high income but the literacy rate is low, it cannot be considered developed.
- **Security:** More than income, people want to have a secured life. A country should be able to provides its citizens a sense of security.

4. Explain the importance of sustainable development with reference to groundwater by giving example.

Answer: Sustainable development means a development in a manner that satisfies the demands of today without hampering or compromising the ability of the future generations to meet their needs by utilizing the resources.

In lay man's language it means using the resources in a manner that you and the future generations can use them tomorrow as well.

It is important because of the reason that we may enjoy the gifts of nature, but cannot think of our generations to live without such benefits. It becomes our duty to use nature for the fulfillment of our needs and not our greed. Our development should not hamper the needs of the future generations.

In the case of groundwater, we have utilized it to the maximum. It is a natural resource which is replenished by nature. People living in the areas with surplus water reserves should take care for its conservation. Efforts should be made not to overuse or degrade the quality of water. Recent evidences show that groundwater is under serious threat of disappearance. If suitable steps are not taken, it can pose serious consequences.

5. "People have conflicting development goals". Support the statement with suitable example.

Answer: It is true to say that people have conflicting developmental goals. What may be the development for one may not be for the other. Different people have different interests, life situations and state of mind. They visualize things, actions, etc. according to their level of understanding.

For example, the construction of a flyover to reduce the congestion and traffic jams may be a development goal especially for the daily commuters. But for the construction of the flyover, surrounding houses, shops, etc. need to be demolished which may not be like by the occupants of these shops and houses. This may not be a development goal for them.

6. Describe any three possible development goals of landless rural labourers.

Answer: The following can be the developmental goals of landless rural labourers.

- More days of work with better wages.
- Social and economic equality.
- Low price food grains.
- Better education facilities for their children.

7. Differentiate between Human Development Report and World Development

Answer: The following are the differences between Human Development Report and World Development Report:

Human Development Report	World Development Report
(a) This notion of development implies good and quality life.	(a) It stresses on rise in per capita income and growth in the economy.
(b) Its parameters are good education, health facilities etc.	(b) It takes into account quantitative aspect of development.
(c) It includes literacy rate, life expectancy, infant mortality rate etc. to determine the status of development of a particular area, region or country.	(c) It includes GDP, national income and per capita income.

8. "Money cannot buy all the goods and services that one needs to live well" Do you agree with this statement? Justify your answer with any three suitable arguments.

Answer: Yes, we agree with the statement that money cannot buy all the goods and services that one needs to live well because of the following reasons.

- Money can buy things that can be one factor on which our life depends like food. But the quality of non-material things like freedom, security and respect cannot be bought with money.
- We cannot buy pollution free environment, unadulterated medicines and peace with money.
- Schools, colleges, parks, hospitals, etc. are the facilities which cannot be run individually. There has to be a collective effort of team work between the government or society in providing these to the general public.

9. Why does Kerala have a better Human Development Index ranking in comparison to Punjab? Explain with three reasons.

Answer: Kerala has a better Human Development Index ranking in comparison to Punjab even though Punjab has a higher per capita income in comparison to Kerala because of the following reasons.

- **Education:** Kerala has a higher level of literacy rate than Punjab. In fact, the literacy rate of Kerala is the highest in India. In Kerala, the literacy rate is ninety-one per cent which is almost as high as that of China. This is mainly because education has been made available to everyone in Kerala whether they are upper caste or the lower caste. There is no bias in the field of education, which is one of the major reasons why Kerala has a better HDI than Punjab.
- **Health care:** The health care facilities in Kerala are far better than those in Punjab. Kerala has over 2700 government medical hospitals, with 330 beds per 1,00,000 population which is the highest in India, making it achieve a higher ranking in the HDI.
- **Politics:** The political parties in Kerala have taken steps for genuine welfare of the people and have invested intelligently and methodologically in the field of health and education. The government of Kerala has even worked for the land reforms in the State to support the people.

10. What is the main norm used by the World Bank in classifying different countries as rich and poor countries? What are the restrictions of such norms?

Answer: Average income or per capita income is the main domain used by the World Bank in classifying different countries as rich and poor countries. According to the World Bank, income is one of the most important attributes. Countries with average income of USD 12616 per annum and above are called rich countries. Countries with average income of USD 1530 or less are called middle-income countries and countries with average income of USD 1035 or less are called poor countries.

This is based on the conception that the higher the total income of the country, the developed it is. However, there are certain restrictions to this norm because income, although an important measure for calculating growth and development, is not the only attribute. Over the past few decades, health and education have made an important mark in the development of a country. So, even if the country has high per capita income and literacy rate but does not have good medical facilities, it cannot be considered developed.

11. Besides income, what are the six other things people may look for growth and development?

Answer: The following are the six things that people may look for growth and development, besides income.

- freedom
- security
- respect
- quality of life
- health
- education

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [5 MARKS]

12. "Though the level of income is important, it is an inadequate measure of the level of development." Justify the statement.

Answer:

Although the level of income is an important indicator of development, it is an inadequate measure of the level of development because:

- (a) it takes into consideration only the monetary view of development.
- (b) a high level of income may not satisfy an individual if other aspects like security, freedom, opportunities, welfare, health facilities, education and cleanliness, are absent.
- (c) it is perhaps universally accepted that development is not just about income, although income (economic wealth, more generally) has a great deal to do with it.
- (d) development is also about the removal of poverty and undernutrition. It is an increase in life expectancy and access to sanitation, clean drinking water and health services. It is the reduction of infant mortality and increased access to knowledge and schooling and literacy, in particular.
- (e) it fails as an adequate overall measure and must be supplemented by other indicators directly.

13. What is Human Development Index? Which organization measures the HDI? Explain the three major indicators of the HDI.

Answer:

Human Development Index is a tool developed by the United Nations to measure and rank countries based on the level of social and economic development. The HDI makes it possible to track changes in development levels from time to time and to compare development levels in different countries. The concept of HDI goes beyond income and growth to cover overall development with the object of improving the conditions of people from all angles.

The organization that measures the HDI is the United Nations.

Three major indicators of the HDI are as follows.

- **Health:** Without proper health facilities, no matter how much a country earns, it will not be able to provide basic facilities to its people.
- **Education:** Over the past few decades, education has become an important factor in leading a quality life. So, if the country has high income but the literacy rate is low, it cannot be considered developed.
- **Security:** More than income, people want to have a secured life. A country should be able to provide its citizens a sense of security.

14. What is sustainable development? Suggest any two ways in which resources can be used judiciously.

Answer:

Sustainable development is a pattern of development that promises the use of resources in a way that meets human needs while preserving the environment so that these needs can be met not only in the present, but also for generations to come.

In basic understanding, like today we are able to use the resources given to us, the future generations should also be able to use them for which we need to keep a tab on our usage and use the resources judiciously.

Today, we need to fuel the concept of sustainable development to make sure that resources are also available for the future generations.

Resources can be used judiciously in the following manner.

- Using bicycle or walking for short distances rather than using a two wheeler or four wheeler can help in saving fuel and also will help in reducing air pollution.
- Urbanization without deforestation can help us to sustain the natural environment.
- By using CNG in place of petrol, we can help in reducing air pollution.
- Judiciously using water resources and not polluting them will help us to preserve our water resources.

15. In what respects is the criterion used by the UNDP for measuring development different from the one used by the World Bank?

Answer: The criterion used by the UNDP for measuring development is different from the criterion used by the World Bank in the following ways.

- The UNDP compares the development of the countries on the basis of literacy rate, gross enrolment ratio and health status of their people. On the other hand, the World Bank compares the development of the countries on the basis of per capita income or average income.
- On the basis of the comparison done by the UNDP, the countries are ranked as first, second, third... whereas on the basis of the comparison done by the World Bank the countries are divided into three categories:
 1. Rich or developed or high-income countries
 2. Middle-income or developing countries
 3. Poor or underdeveloped or low-income countries
- The UNDP has a broader concept of development and the World Bank has a narrow concept of development.

16. Describe briefly five steps taken by the Indian government for raising the status of women at par with that of men.

Answer: The following steps have been taken by the Indian government for raising the status of women at par with that of men.

- (a) Women are given the equal right to vote like those of men.
- (b) The government of India has declared dowry as illegal and now no one can force the other party to give dowry.
- (c) To impart education to girls various schools and colleges have been opened.
- (d) Seats have been reserved for women in the legislatures to enable them to participate in decision making.
- (e) Women have been recognised as a separate target group in our development planning, for raising their status at par with that of men. To achieve the above objective the National Commission for women was set up in January 1992.

17. What is the main criterion used by the World Bank for classifying different countries? What are the limitations of this criterion, if any? In what respects is the criterion used by the UNDP for measuring development different from the one used by the World Bank?

Answer: The criterion used by the UNDP for measuring development is different from the criterion used by the World Bank in the following ways.

- The UNDP compares the development of the countries on the basis of literacy rate, gross enrolment ratio and health status of their people. On the other hand, the World Bank compares the development of the countries on the basis of per capita income or average income.
- On the basis of the comparison done by the UNDP, the countries are ranked as first, second, third... whereas on the basis of the comparison done by the World Bank the countries are divided into three categories:
 1. Rich or developed or high-income countries
 2. Middle-income or developing countries
 3. Poor or underdeveloped or low-income countries
- The UNDP has a broader concept of development and the World Bank has a narrow concept of development.

Limitation: Limitation of this criterion is that average or per capita income is not the only factor important for development. This factor hides the other important factor—distribution of income, which also affects development. Higher average income, along with equitable distribution of income is considered favourable for development.

.....

SECTORS OF THE INDIAN ECONOMY

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTION [3 MARKS]

1. Why has the entire tertiary sector not grown in importance? Explain.

Answer: The entire tertiary sector has not grown in importance because of the following reasons:

- **Peculiarity of skills in the tertiary sector:** Highly-educated and skilled professionals only are able to get employment. Other engage themselves in low-paid jobs.
- **High incomes:** Higher incomes are available for the top-level administrative jobs only. Low-paid jobs do not attract employment.
- **No job security:** Large number of workers are casual with irregular and low incomes barely to sustain livelihoods.

2. Why does disguised employment not help in productivity of a country? Explain with the help of an example.

Answer: Disguised employment means that more number of people employed in an economic activity than required. If these extra people are removed, there will be no effect on the production. They seem to be employed but actually they are not. The workforce is not being used to its potential. They divide the work but do not increase production.

They do not help in increasing the productivity as their efforts are not economic. For example, in the rural areas, the entire family is engaged in the production of crops on the same piece of land. If there are ten people in the family, three people can manage the production. If the extra seven people are removed the productivity will be the same. They seem to be making no contribution. Hence, it is truly stated that disguised or hidden employment does not help in productivity of a country.

3. Explain the meaning of disguised employment with the help of an example

Answer: The following are the features of the unorganized sector.

- Working hours are more and harsh.
- No job security is there.
- No employment benefits are given.
- Employees work in poor working conditions.

4. Explain the objectives of implementing the NREGA 2005

Answer: National Rural Employment Guarantee Act 2005 (NREGA) is an Indian labour law and social security measure that aims to guarantee the right to work.

- It aims at enhancing livelihood security in rural areas by providing at least 100 days of wage employment in a financial year to every household whose adult members volunteer to do unskilled manual work.
- The NREGA was initiated with the objective of “enhancing livelihood security in rural areas by providing at least 100 days of guaranteed wage employment in a financial year, to every household whose adult members volunteer to do unskilled manual work.”
- Another aim of NREGA is to provide employment within 5 km of an applicant’s residence, and minimum wages are to be paid. If work is not provided within 15 days of applying, applicants are entitled to an unemployment allowance.

5. Explain with suitable examples which part of the service sector is not growing in importance.

Answer: The employment generation part of service sector is not growing in importance. The service sector in India employs different kinds of people. At one end, there are a limited number of services that employ highly skilled and educated workers.

At the other end, there are a very large number of workers engaged in services such as small shopkeepers, repair persons, cattle, owners, transport drivers and electricians. These people barely

manage to earn there living and yet they perform these services because no alternative opportunity for work are available for them.

6. Highlight the three factors responsible for the growth of service sector in the Indian economy.

Answer: Ever since the service sector got liberalized in the year 1991, it has seen constant growth. The following are the reasons responsible for the growth of service sector in the Indian economy.

- Increase in the income of people: Since the income level of the people has been increasing ever since, with increasing affluence there is increase in the demands of the services like maids, cooks, servants and gardeners.
- (h) Increase in population: With an increase in number of people in the country, the demand for service sector has increased. Demands for service like schools, health department and nursing homes have increased.
- Increase in numbers of working women: With the passage of time there has been a massive increase in the number of working women in India. This has led to increase in demands in the service sector like household help, babysitters and cooks.

7. Explain disguised unemployment with two examples, one from urban areas and other from rural areas.

Answer:

Disguised unemployment is a kind of unemployment in which some people look like being employed but are actually not employed fully. This situation is also known as hidden unemployment. It refers to a situation wherein more people are engaged in a work than required. When the surplus workers from a rural area engaged in the activity or the work, are removed, the production remains unaffected.

In urban areas, there are many people who are employed. Their jobs do not suit their qualifications. Disguised unemployment can be seen in the service sector where painters, repair person, plumber, etc. are doing odd jobs. Many of them do not find work on a daily basis. Taking an example, there is a shop, which require only two persons for handling it, but if there are three servants and one owner to look after the shop, then this shows that two servants are in the situation of disguised unemployment.

In rural areas, disguised employment can be seen in the agricultural sector. Most often, all the members of a family are engaged on the same piece of land. If a few members are withdrawn, there will no effect on the production. So, the members who are withdrawn are in the situation of disguised unemployment.

8. “Consequences of environmental degradation do not respect national or state boundaries.”

Explain

Answer:

Environmental degradation is a global issue, which has been discussed and debated over the past decades. It is the deterioration of the environment through depletion of resources such as air, water and soil. It affects and depletes the ecosystem, hampers the ozone layer and is responsible for extinction of wildlife. Environmental degradation is not restricted to national or state boundaries. It hampers the surroundings irrespective of any national or state boundaries and its harmful effects are well felt in the surrounding states and neighbouring countries and even globally.

For example, if India has a lot of air pollution through massive thermal power plants and other sources, it affects its neighbouring countries like Pakistan, Sri Lanka and Bangladesh. Acid rain and climate change are some transcontinental issues. Land degradation in india affects Bangladesh as it brings massive silt and floods.

Therefore, environmental degradation is a serious issue which has grabbed the attention of all countries irrespective of boundaries because protecting the environment is the need of the hour at the global level.

9. How did NREGA 2005 bring upliftment of the rural people? Explain.

Answer:

The NREGA 2005 has helped in the upliftment of Rural people in the following manner.

- Guaranteed Employment: Any adult member of a rural household applying for work under the Act is entitled to employment. Every rural household is entitled to 100 days of employment. Guaranteed Wages: Wages are to be paid on a weekly basis and not beyond a fortnight. Wages are to be paid on the basis of:
 - Centre-notified, state-specific NREGA wage list
 - Time rates and piece rates as per state-specific Schedule of Rates (SoRs).
 - In any case, the wage cannot be at a rate less than Rs. 60 per day.
- Unemployment Allowance: If work is not provided within 15 days of applying, the state is expected to pay an unemployment allowance which is one-fourth of the wage rate.

10. Explain the interdependence of all three sectors giving examples from transportation system.

Answer:

All the three sectors, primary, secondary and tertiary, are interdependent to each other in the following ways.

- Primary sector makes possible the extraction of natural resource like iron. This iron is then taken to the secondary sector for manufacturing through the transportation system like trucks. The extraction process is supported by the financing and information technological institutions.
- It is through the secondary sector that the natural resource iron is changed into other forms through the process of manufacturing. Manufacturing again need the support of the service sector in the form of engineers, electricians, etc. Iron is changed into iron sheets and then into vehicles for transportation.
- Once manufactured, the vehicles are sold through various trading agencies. These vehicles are used for providing services in the tertiary sector and at the same time support the primary and the secondary sectors to carry out their processes.

11. What constitutes the unorganized sector in urban areas? Why do workers in this area need protection?

Answer:

In the urban areas, unorganised sector comprises mainly small-scale industry, casual workers in construction, trade and transport, street vendors, head-load workers, garment makers, ragpickers, etc. All these workers constitute unorganized sector in urban areas.

A majority of workers in the unorganized sector are from scheduled castes scheduled tribes and backward communities. Workers in unorganised sector urban areas need protection because, besides getting the irregular and low-paid work, these workers also face social discrimination. They are looked down upon by the people in urban areas. Protection and support to the unorganised sector workers is thus necessary for both economic and social development.

12. How does service sector help in the development of primary and secondary sectors? Explain with examples.

Answer:

After primary and secondary sectors, there is a third sector called the service sector also known as tertiary sector. Activities that fall under the service sector help in the development of the primary and secondary sectors by not directly producing a good but helping these sectors by activities that are an aid or a support for the production process.

For example, goods that are produced in the primary or secondary sector would need to be transported by trucks or trains and then sold in wholesale and retail shops. At times, it may be necessary to store these goods in godowns. We may also need to talk to others over telephone or send letters (communication) or borrow money from banks (banking) to help production and

trade. Transport, storage, communication, banking and trade are some examples of service or tertiary sector.

Since these activities generate services rather than goods, they promote primary and secondary sectors by providing expertise, finance, transportation, advertisement, etc.

13. With the example of sugar cane, explain the interdependence of all the three sectors of economy.

Answer:

Primary Sector: cultivation of sugar cane

Secondary Sector: processing of sugar cane to make sugar

- Transportation of sugar cane into factories for processing it into sugar
- Transportation of sugar packs to various markets
- Sale of sugar by wholesalers and retailers.

So, the process starts when the sugar is cultivated. Since cultivation is part of agriculture, it comes in the primary sector. After the cultivation, the sugar cane is processed to make sugar in the factories, which is an industrial process and thus comes in the secondary sector. After which, the sugar is transported to various markets, where it is sold by retailers and wholesalers which is part of tertiary sector.

In this way, all the three sectors are interdependent.

14. How far is it correct to say that several services which cannot be provided by private sector can be provided by the public sector? Explain.

Answer: A few examples of public sector activities are Indian Railways, water, electricity board and modes of transport.

There are several necessities of common man, but it is not possible for the private sector to provide all these things at reasonable cost. For example, water and electricity are the basic needs of everyone. If the work of providing these is given to private sector then the latter can exploit this opportunity by selling the same at high rates. Therefore the supply of basic amenities is given to the government so that it provides these facilities to the people at low and affordable rates, ensuring the smooth and uninterrupted supply to the public.

15. Name the sector that is the largest employer in India. Why does this sector produce only a quarter of the National GDP?

Answer: The agricultural sector (Primary) is the largest employer in India. Nearly 51% of the population is engaged in this sector in one way or the other. However, its share in the national GDP is very less because of the following reasons.

- The average size of the land holdings is very low which results in low productivity per holder.
- Less use of modern technology and knowhow among the farmers to increase crop productivity.
- The systems of providing financing and marketing facilities have been insufficient since independence. The farmers are not able to get benefits from the loan facilities and access to large markets.
- Absence of alternate income generating activities in rural areas give rise to disguised unemployment where efficient labour force is not used to its optimum.

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTION [5 MARKS]

16. What is unorganized sector? Describe the working procedure of this sector.

Answer:

An unorganized sector is a sector that is not registered by the government. It is characterized by small and scattered units. Being outside the control of the government, no rules and regulations are followed regarding the employment and working conditions.

This sector includes a large number of people who are employed on their own doing small jobs

such selling things on the street or doing repair work. **Working procedure in unorganized sectors is as follows.**

- The unorganised sector is characterised by small and scattered units, which are largely outside the control of the government.
- There are rules and regulations but these are not followed.
- Jobs here are low-paid and often not regular.
- The condition of workers in unorganized sector is not good or stable.
- There is no provision for overtime, paid leave, holidays, leave due to sickness, etc.
- Employment is not secure. People can be asked to leave without any reason. When there is less work, such as during some seasons, some people may be asked to leave.
- A lot also depend on the whims of the employer.
- This sector includes a large number of people who are employed on their own, doing small jobs such as selling things on the street or doing repair work

17. Give five reasons for the rising importance of the tertiary sector in production

Answer:

Over the forty years, between 1970 and 71, and 2010 and 11, while production in all the three sectors has increased, it has increased the most in the tertiary sector. The following factors are making the tertiary sector important in India.

- **Basic services:** In any country, several services such as hospitals, educational institutions, post and telegraph services, police stations, courts, village administrative offices, municipal corporations, defence, transport, banks and insurance companies, are required. These can be considered as basic services. In a developing country, the government has to take responsibility for the provision of these services.
- **Development of primary and secondary sector:** The development of agriculture and industry leads to the development of services such as transport, trade and storage. The greater the development of the primary and secondary sectors, the more would be the demand for such services.
- **Rise in income levels:** As income levels rise, certain sections of people start demanding many more services like eating out, tourism, shopping, private hospitals, private schools and professional training centres. We can see this change quite sharply in cities, especially in big cities.
- **Rise in information technology:** Over the past decade or so, certain new services, such as those based on information and communication technology have become important and essential. The production of these services has been rising rapidly.
- **Globalization:** Due to globalization, people have become aware of new services and activities, and communication because of which the tertiary sector has gained importance.

18. Explain with suitable examples how public sector contributes to the economic development of the nation.

Answer:

- **Creation of infrastructure:** Public sector promotes the economic development since it brings about creation and expansion of infrastructure and the infrastructure plays an important role in economic development.
- **Generates financial resources:** Public Sector provides for various employment opportunities since major part of public sector depends on manpower and higher employment opportunities implies higher generation of financial resources for economic development.
- **Contributes to HDI:** Public sector majorly contributes to the Human Development Index since health and education industries come under the purview of public sector.
- **Availability of goods:** Public sector helps in availability of goods at moderate rates, which helps in maintaining financial security and thus helps in economic development.
- **Provides encouragement:** It provides encouragement to small, medium and cottage production units. It also strives for the creation of welfare state.

19. Describe the provisions of the National Rural Employment Guarantee Act 2005

Answer:

National Rural Employment Guarantee Act 2005 aims to guarantee the right to work. It also aims at improving livelihood in rural areas.

The following are the provisions of the NREGA.

- **Eligibility:** Any Indian citizen who is above the age of 18 years and resides in the rural area is entitled to apply for work.
- **Distance:** Work is to be provided by the government in a radius of 5 km of the applicant if possible and in any case within the block. If the work provided is beyond 5 km of distance, extra travel allowance is to be paid.
- **Wages:** Workers under NREGA are entitled to the statutory minimum wage applicable to agricultural labourers in the state, until and unless the central government notifies a different wage. In whichever case, the minimum wage cannot go below ₹ 60 per day.
- **Timely payment:** Workers are to be paid weekly or in any case not later than a fortnight. Payment of wages should be made directly to the person concerned on pre-announced dates.
- **Entitlement:** Any applicant is entitled to work within 15 days, for as many as he/she applied, subject to a limitation of 100 days per year per household.

20. Compare the employment conditions prevailing in the organised and unorganised sector?

Answer:

Organised sector	Unorganised sector
<p>(a) Workers have job security.</p> <p>(b) Workers get regular monthly salary.</p> <p>(c) Rules and regulations are followed here.</p> <p>(d) Workers get benefits like provident fund, paid leave and medical benefits.</p> <p>(e) Working hours are fixed here.</p> <p>(f) It is called the organised sector because it has some formal processes and procedures.</p> <p>(g) Working conditions are favourable.</p>	<p>Workers do not have job security.</p> <p>Workers get daily wages.</p> <p>Rules and regulations are not followed here.</p> <p>Workers do not get any such benefits.</p> <p>Working hours are not fixed here. Sometimes, workers work for 10-12 hours straight.</p> <p>There are not formal processes and producers here.</p> <p>Working conditions are not favourable.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">(any five)</p>

21. What is GDP? Explain the process to calculate GDP.

Answer:

The GDP, which is the Gross Domestic Product, is the value of all final goods and services produced within a country during a particular year. The value of final goods and services produced in each sector during a particular year provides the total production of the sector for that year. And the sum of production in the three sectors gives what is called the Gross Domestic Product (GDP) of a country. The GDP shows how big the economy is.

In India, the mammoth task of calculating GDP is undertaken by the Central Government. This ministry, with the help of various government departments of all the Indian states and union territories, collects information relating to total volume of goods and services and their prices and then estimates the GDP. The GDP is usually calculated on annual basis. It includes private and

public consumption, government outlays, investments and that occur within a defined territory.

$$GDP = C+G+I+NX$$

here, C = private consumption or consumer spending

 G = the sum of government's spending

 I = the sum of all country's business spending on capital

 NX = the nation's total net exports calculated as total exports minus imports (NX = Export - Imports)

22. Distinguish between public and private sectors.

Answer:

Public Sector	Private Sector
<p>(a) In the public sector, the government owns most of the assets and provides all the services.</p> <p>(b) Activities in the private sector are guided by the motive to earn profits. To get such services, we have to pay money to these individuals and companies.</p> <p>(c) Their main way of making revenue is through public revenue like tax, duty and penalty.</p> <p>(d) The benefits of working in public sector is that it gives job security, allowances and retirement benefits.</p> <p>(e) Railways and post office are the examples of the public sector.</p>	<p>In the private sector, ownership of assets and delivery of services are in the hands of private individuals or companies.</p> <p>The purpose of the public sector is not just to earn profits. Governments raise money through taxes and other ways to meet expenses on the services rendered by it.</p> <p>Their main way of making revenue is through issuing shares and debentures or by taking loans.</p> <p>The benefits of working in private sector is that it gives exciting salary packages and perks.</p> <p>Tata Iron and Steel Company Limited (TISCO) or Reliance Industries Limited (RIL) are examples of the private sector.</p>

23. Give five reasons for the rising of the tertiary sector in India.

Answer:

Over the forty years, between 1970 and 71, and 2010 and 11, while production in all the three sectors has increased, it has increased the most in the tertiary sector. The following factors are making the tertiary sector important in India.

- **Basic services:** In any country, several services such as hospitals, educational institutions, post and telegraph services, police stations, courts, village administrative offices, municipal corporations, defence, transport, banks and insurance companies, are required. These can be considered as basic services. In a developing country, the government has to take responsibility for the provision of these services.
- **Development of primary and secondary sector:** The development of agriculture and industry leads to the development of services such as transport, trade and storage. The greater the development of the primary and secondary sectors, the more would be the demand for such services.
- **Rise in income levels:** As income levels rise, certain sections of people start demanding many more services like eating out, tourism, shopping, private hospitals, private schools and professional training centres. We can see this change quite sharply in cities, especially in big cities.
- **Rise in information technology:** Over the past decade or so, certain new services, such as those based on information and communication technology have become important and essential. The production of these services has been rising rapidly.
- **Globalization:** Due to globalization, people have become aware of new services and activities, and communication because of which the tertiary sector has gained importance.

24. Explain how public sector contributes to the economic development of nation.

Answer:

- **Creation of infrastructure:** Public sector promotes the economic development since it brings about creation and expansion of infrastructure and the infrastructure plays an important role in economic development.
- **Generates financial resources:** Public Sector provides for various employment opportunities since major part of public sector depends on manpower and higher employment opportunities implies higher generation of financial resources for economic development.
- **Contributes to HDI:** Public sector majorly contributes to the Human Development Index since health and education industries come under the purview of public sector.
- **Availability of goods:** Public sector helps in availability of goods at moderate rates, which helps in maintaining financial security and thus helps in economic development.
- **Provides encouragement:** It provides encouragement to small, medium and cottage production units. It also strives for the creation of welfare state

25. In what ways can employment be increased in urban areas?

Answer:

Urban unemployment is characterised by the existence of both open unemployment, which in turn is an offshoot of rural unemployment itself, and the educated unemployment. Main causes of urban unemployment are insufficient economic development, defective system of education and slow growth of industrialisation.

Urban unemployment can be increased in the following ways.

- Reform of the educational system to make it vocational at the school stage.
- Concrete action will have to be taken to promote decentralisation and dispersal of industrial activity.
- Promotion of small-scale industries and encouragement to self-employment by banks.
- Develop techniques of production that can be taken up with low capital intensity.
- Provision of infrastructure like railways, roads, hospitals and schools which will not only create employment opportunities but also contribute to development.

26. How can more employment opportunities be created in the rural areas?

Answer. The following steps can be taken to create more employment in the rural areas.

- (a) Loans should be provided to small farmers by the government or bank to have more irrigation facilities like wells and tube wells in order to enable them to grow second crop.
- (b) New dams and canals should be constructed. This will lead to more employment in the agricultural sector.
- (c) Transportation and storage facilities must be improved to provide productive employment to not only the farmers but also to others in services like transport and trade.
- (d) Banks should provide agricultural credit to the farmers for farming to improve.
- (e) Industries such as dal mill, cold storage, honey collection centers and processing of vegetables should be set up in rural or semi-rural areas. Such industries will get raw materials from the rural areas and will create more employment opportunities for the rural people.
- (f) More schools should be opened in rural areas. This will provide jobs to about 20 lakh people in the education sector.
- (g) Health services should be improved by opening dispensaries and hospitals. This will create jobs for doctors, nurses and other staff.
- (h) Tourism, regional craft industry and Information Technology should be encouraged by the government to create more employment opportunities. (any five)

27. What is the role of government in public sector?

Answer. The following points sum up the role of government in public sector.

(a) Welfare of the people: The modern state is a welfare state that looks after the interests of its citizens. People pay different types of taxes and expect their representatives or the government to follow policies for their welfare. Services like railways, posts and telegraphs are run by the government for the welfare of the people.

(b) Large expenditure: Some activities like construction of roads need large sums of expenditure that cannot be borne by the private sector. So, the government takes up such activities in the interest of the people in a democracy.

(c) Support of the government: There are some activities that need support of the government in the form of subsidy such as provision of foodgrains for the poor through ration shops. The government buys wheat, paddy etc. at a higher price but sells at a lower price at ration shops.

(d) Duty of the government: It is duty of the government to raise the living standard of the people. It should make arrangements for quality education and health services in order to take care of the poorest and most ignored regions of the country through increase in expenditure in such areas. Thus, the government takes up various activities and spends a lot of expenditure on them.

28. What is Planning Commission? What have been its findings?

Answer. Planning Commission is a body set up by the Central Government that conducts economic survey and chalks out programmes and policies to tackle economy-related issues. The following have been the findings of the Planning Commission.

(a) 20 lakh jobs need to be created in the education sector alone.

(b) There is a dire need to improve health standards by appointing doctors, nurses and health workers, especially in the rural areas.

(c) Development of income generating potentials like tourism, regional craft, etc. in the rural areas through proper planning. It has been said that if tourism as a sector is improved, every year we can give additional employment to more than 35 lakh people.

(d) Development of IT sector, which could generate employment to lakhs of people in the urban areas.

MONEY AND CREDIT

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [1 MARK]

1. What is collateral?

Answer: Collateral is an asset that the borrower owns such as land, building, vehicle, livestock, deposits with the banks and uses these as a guarantee to the lender until the loan is repaid.

2. Define credit.

Answer: Credit refers to an agreement in which the lender supplies the borrower with money, goods or services in return for the promise of future payments with interest.

3. Which are the two major sources of formal loan for rural households?

Answer: Banks and Cooperatives

4. What is the meaning of barter system?

Answer: A system where goods are directly exchanged without the use of money is called barter system.

5. What is meant by double coincidence of wants?

Answer: Double coincidence of wants means owner of good X, say shoes, to find someone else with good Y, say wheat, and both being in need of each other's good

6. Define money.

Answer. Money is anything which has common acceptability as a means of exchange, a measure and a store of value.

7. Why is money called 'a medium of exchange'?

OR

How does money act as a medium of exchange?

Answer: Money acts as an intermediary in the process of exchange, thus it is called a medium of exchange.

8. What is a cheque?

Answer: A cheque is a paper instructing the bank to pay a specific amount from a person's account to the person in whose name the cheque has been issued.

9. What is a debt-trap?

Answer. A debt-trap is a situation when it becomes impossible to repay the loan and the borrower adds on a new debt to pay the existing debt.

10. Why are banks unwilling to lend loans to small farmers?

Answer. Banks provide loans after collateral and documentation securities, which generally the small farmers fail to comply with. Therefore, banks are unwilling to give loans to small farmers.

11. Who supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans?

Answer: Reserve Bank of India

12. What are the two forms of modern currency?

Answer: Paper notes and Coins

13. How do the deposits with the banks become their source of income?

Answer: Banks use a major portion of deposits to extend loans. They charge a higher rate of interest on loans than what they offer on deposits. The difference between what is charged from borrowers and what is paid to the depositors is the main source of income for the banks.

14. Why can one not refuse a payment made in rupees in India?

Answer: One cannot refuse a payment made in rupees in India because it is authorised by the government of India. It is accepted as a medium of exchange all over the country.

15. Compare formal sector loans with informal sector loans regarding interest only.

Answer: In formal sector, the rate of interest is low. It is fixed by the Reserve Bank of India, who supervises the functioning of formal sources of loan.

In informal sector, the rate of interest is very high as there is no organisation to supervise the functioning of informal sources of loan.

16. Why is the supervision of the functioning of formal sources of loans necessary?

Answer: It is necessary to supervise the functioning of formal sources of loans because the banks have to maintain a minimum cash balance out of the deposits they receive. They should also provide loans to small cultivators, mall scale industries etc.

17. Prove with an argument that there is a great need to expand formal sources of credit in rural India.

Answer: There is a great need to expand the formal sources of credit in rural India because:

- There is no organisation to supervise credit activities of the informal sector. It could lead to increasing debt among the borrowers.
- The rate of interest is very high in informal sector.

18. Why are most of the poor households deprived from the formal sector of loans?

Answer: Most of the poor households are deprived from the formal sector of loans because they do not have the collateral to keep with the banks.

19. How does money eliminate the need for double coincidence of wants?

Answer: Money solves the problem of double coincidence of wants by acting as a medium of exchange.

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [3 MARKS]

20. In situations with high risks, credit might create further problems for the borrower.

Explain?

Answer: Whether a credit would be useful or not, will depend on a number of factors like – risks involved, whether there is some support against a loss, terms of credit etc. It is a fact that in situations with high risks, credit might create further problems for the borrower. For example, credit taken by farmers for cultivation might create problems for the farmer at some times. Crop production involves high costs on inputs such as HYV seeds, fertilizers, pesticides, irrigation etc. Farmers generally take loans at the beginning of the season and repay the loan after harvest. But the failure of the crop makes loan repayment impossible. Then in order to repay the loan sometimes, they become bound to sell part of their land. So, their situations become worse than before. The incidences of farmers' suicides especially in Maharashtra are the burning examples of this situation. Thus, whether a credit would be useful or not, depends on the various risks involved in the situation.

21. How does money solve the problem of double coincidence of wants? Explain with example of your own.

Answer: In a barter system where goods are directly exchanged without the use of money, double coincidence of wants is an essential feature. By serving as a medium of exchange, money removes the need for double coincidence of wants and the difficulties associated with the barter system. For example, it is no longer necessary for the farmer to look for a book publisher who will buy his cereals at the same time sell him books. All he has to do is find a buyer for his cereals. If he has exchanged his cereals for money, he can purchase any goods or service which he needs. This is because money acts as a medium of exchange.

22. How do banks mediate between those who have surplus money and those who need money?

Answer: We know that banks accept the deposits from the people who have surplus money and also pay an interest on the deposits.

But banks keep only a small portion (15 per cent in India) of their deposits as cash with themselves. This is kept as provision to pay the depositors who might come to withdraw money from their accounts in the bank on any day. They use the major portion of the deposits to extend loans to those who need money. In this way banks mediate between those who have surplus money and those who need money.

23. When does credit push the borrower into a debt-trap? Explain with the help of an example.

Answer:

In situation with high risks, credit might create problems and pushes the borrower into a debt-trap. He is much worse off than before. For example, crop production involves high costs on inputs such as fertilizers, pesticides, water etc. Farmers generally take loans at the beginning of the season and repay the loan after harvest. But the failure of the crop makes loan repayment impossible. They have to sell part of the land to repay the loan or a fresh loan may be required to repay the previous loan, and the borrower may find himself caught in a vicious circle and recovery from such a situation is very painful.

24. “Most of the poor households still depend on the informal sector for loans, both in rural and urban areas of India.” Support the statement with three examples.

OR

“Poor households still depend on informal sources of credit.” Support the statement with examples.

Answer:

Poor households still depend on informal sources of credit because:

- Bank loans require proper documentation and collateral which is rarely available with poor households.
- Informal sources of credit such as moneylenders know the borrowers personally and are often willing to give a loan without a collateral.
- Sometimes, if the borrowers are unable to return the loan, they can get additional loans from moneylenders.

25. How do SHGs help borrowers to overcome the problem of lack of collateral? Explain with an example.

Answer:

SHGs help borrowers to overcome the problem of lack of collateral in the following ways:

- It is the group that is responsible for the repayment of loan.
- Any case of non-payment of loan by any member is followed up seriously by other members.
- The formal sector is willing to lend to the members of SHGs because of their good track record of managing the credit.

26. Why is there a great need to expand formal sector of credit in India? Explain any three reasons.

Answer: There is a great need to expand formal sector of credit in India because:

- There is no organisation to supervise the credit activities of lenders in informal sector.
- The rate of interest charged by the informal sector is very high as compared to formal sector.
- People who might wish to start a business by borrowing may not do so because of high cost of borrowing in informal sector.
- The higher interest rate of borrowing can mean that the amount to be repaid is greater than the income of the borrower in informal sector.

27. "Money has made transactions easy." Justify.

Answer: Money has made transactions easy because:

- It can be easily exchanged with any commodity or service.
- It solves the problem of double coincidence of wants.
- It is the perfect store of value.
- It makes economic activities quite independent from each other.

28. How is money used as a medium of exchange? Explain with examples

Answer: Money is used as a medium of exchange because it serves as a common medium through which people can carry out buying and selling. Use of money makes economic activities independent of each other. At the same time, it removes the inconvenience caused by the barter system.

For example, a person wants to sell sugar and buy wheat. He has to look for a person who wants sugar and has wheat to sell. In contrast, if in an economy, where money is used, the person who wants to sell sugar only has to look for a buyer for his sugar. The money which he will get can be used to purchase the wheat or any other commodity in the market. Since, money is used in the exchange process it is called a medium of exchange.

29. What are the modern forms of money? Why is rupee widely accepted as a medium of exchange? Explain two reasons.

Answer: Modern forms of money include paper notes and coins.

Rupee is widely accepted as a medium of exchange because:

- It is authorised by the government of India.
 - The law legalises the use of rupee as a medium of payment and settling the transactions.
- Thus, no one can refuse a payment made in rupees.

30. What is a collateral? Why do lenders ask for collateral while lending? Explain

Answer:

A collateral is an asset such as land, building, livestock, vehicle or deposits with the banks that the borrower owns and uses this as a guarantee to the lender until the loan is repaid.

The lenders ask for a collateral before lending because:

- It is an asset that the borrower owns and uses this as a guarantee to the lender – until the loan is repaid.
- Collateral with the lender acts as a proof that the borrower will return the money.
- By keeping a collateral with the lender, the borrower is bound to be regular in paying the interest because the borrower does not want to lose the collateral.

31. What are demand deposits? How is money safe in the banks? Explain.

Answer:

Deposits in the bank account which are payable on demand are called demand deposits.

Banks accept deposits from number of people. Some part of that money is given out as loan and the other part is kept with the banks for making payments. So, the money is safe with the banks.

The depositors can withdraw their money whenever they want.

32. How can money be easily exchange for goods or services? Give an example to explain.

Answer:

Transactions are made in money because a person holding money can easily exchange it for any commodity or a service. It solves the problem of double coincidence of wants by acting as a medium of exchange.

For example, a shoe manufacturer wants to sell shoes in the market and wants to buy rice. Under barter system, both parties selling shoes and rice have to agree to buy and sell each other's commodities and this creates a problem which is referred to as double coincidence of wants. This problem is overcome by the introduction of money. Now, the shoe manufacturer will sell the shoes for money and with that money he can buy rice.

33. "The credit activities of the informal sector should be discouraged." Support the statement with arguments.

Answer:

The credit activities of the informal sector should be discouraged because:

- There is no organisation to supervise the credit activities of the lenders in informal sector.
- The informal sector lends at a very high rate of interest and use unfair means to get the money back.
- Higher cost of borrowing means a large part of the earnings of the borrowers is used to repay the loan. Hence, the borrowers have less income left for themselves.
- Sometimes, due to higher rate of interest, the amount to be repaid becomes higher than the income of the borrower due to that there is always a risk for borrowers to fall in debt-trap.

34. "Cheap and affordable credit is crucial for the country's development." Assess the statement.

Answer:

Cheap and affordable credit is crucial for a country's development because:

- More lending would lead to higher incomes and encourage people to invest in agriculture, engage in business and set up small industries.
- Cheap credit will enable more investment. This leads to acceleration of economic activity.
- Cheap credit would also allow weaker sections of society to access formal sector of lending and get rid of from informal moneylenders.
- Affordable credit would also end the cycle of debt trap.
- Cheap and easy terms of credit would inspire better investment in technology and thus increase competition.

35. "Deposits with the banks are beneficial to the depositors as well as to the nation." Examine the statement

Answer:

Deposits with the banks are beneficial to the depositors as well as to the nation in various ways. Some of them are:

- They provide safe and secure deposits to a person's money.
- They provide excellent saving and investment options and also help in the growth of the nation.
- They provide interests on the deposited money to the depositors.
- Money can be easily withdrawn from the banks as and when required by the depositors.
- They provide easy loans on nominal rates that make it possible for the common man to build their own assets.

36. 'Credit has its own unique role for development.' Justify the statement with arguments.

Answer:

Credit has a unique role in the economic development of the country. It is needed by all the three sectors of the economy.

- In urban sector, big businessmen and small manufacturers need loans either to expand their enterprises, bring new technology or diversifying their businesses.
- In rural sector, the main demand for credit is for crop production. Crop production involves cost of seeds, fertilizers, pesticides, water, electricity, repair of equipments. Cheap credit would thus lead to increase in production.
- Even tertiary sector needs loans to buy the latest equipments and technology. Thus, we can say that credit has a unique role in the development of a country.

37. How is money transferred from one bank account to another bank account? Explain with an example.

Answer:

For payment through cheque, the payer who has an account in the bank, draws out a cheque for a specific amount. The cheque is a statement asking the bank to pay a specific amount from the person's account to the person in whose name the cheque has been issued.

For example, Aman has to pay a specific amount of money to Shruti, say ₹ 60,000. Aman will write a cheque in the name of Shruti. It means Aman instructs his bank to pay the money to Shruti. Shruti will deposit the cheque in her bank. After two or three days, the money will be transferred from Aman's account to Shruti's account.

38. How does money solves the problem of double coincidence of wants? Explain with an example.

Answer:

In barter system, where goods are directly exchanged without the use of money, double coincidence of wants (i.e. a person desires to sell exactly what the other person wishes to buy) is an essential feature. But it, indeed, is a very cumbersome process.

By serving as a medium of exchange, money removes the situation of double coincidence of wants and the difficulties associated with the barter system. For example, it is no longer necessary for a shoe manufacturer to* look for a farmer who will buy his shoes and at the same time sell him wheat. All he has to do is to find a buyer for his shoes, who will exchange his money for shoes. Now, he can purchase wheat or any other good in the market with the help of the money earned. Thus, the problem of double coincidence of wants gets solved with the use of money.

39. How is money used in everyday life? Explain with examples.

Answer:

In everyday life, money is used in following ways:

- It is used as a medium of exchange and facilitates the buying and selling of goods like car, house, food, clothes etc.
- It is used as deposits with the banks or to keep it at home like fixed deposits, bonds etc.
- It is used for borrowing and lending like loan.

40. Explain with examples, how people are involved with the banks.

Answer:

People are involved with the banks in the following ways:

- Depositors
- Borrowers
- The people with excess money deposit it in the banks for safety. In turn they earn interest on the amount deposited.

At the same time, there are people who need money for various activities. They approach the banks for credit. The bank charges interest from the borrowers.

41. Why do lenders ask for a collateral while lending? Give any three reasons.

Answer:

The lenders ask for a collateral before lending because:

- It is an asset that the borrower owns and uses this as a guarantee to the lender – until the loan is repaid.
- Collateral with the lender acts as a proof that the borrower will return the money.
- By keeping a collateral with the lender, the borrower is bound to be regular in paying the interest because the borrower does not want to lose the collateral.

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [5 MARKS]

42. Describe the vital and positive role of credit with examples.

Answer:

Credit plays a vital and positive role in the following ways:

- It helps people from all walks of life in setting up their business, increase their income and provide support to their family needs.
- It makes it possible for the people to own or construct their own house and get relief from monthly rent.
- People often avail themselves of credit to purchase luxury items like vehicles, A.Cs, etc., which further raises their standard of living.
- It enables us to invest in human resource. People take credit for education, training, etc. which allows enrichment of human resource.
- For example, Salim availed credit facility to meet the working capital needs of production. It helped him to meet the ongoing expenses of production, complete production on time, thereby, increasing his income.

43. How can the formal sector loans be made beneficial for poor farmers and workers? Suggest any five measures.

Answer:

The formal sector loans can be made beneficial to poor farmers and workers in following ways:

- The process of providing loans should be made easier and accessible to them.
- Large number of banks and cooperatives should be opened in the rural areas.
- Banks and cooperatives should expand their facility of providing loans so as to decrease dependence on informal sector.
- Special focus should be paid on poor and small farmers along with small scale industries.
- Loan processing should be simple, faster and timely.

44. Why is it necessary for the banks and cooperative societies to increase their lending facilities in rural areas? Explain.

Answer:

Banks and cooperatives should extend their lending activities in rural areas because:

- Rural poor and farmers have to borrow money from moneylenders at a very high rate of interest. Therefore, the cost to the borrowing is very high.
- A large part of the earnings of borrower is used to repay the loans. Hence, they have less income.
- Sometimes, a higher rate of lending means that the amount to be repaid is more than the earnings of the borrower.
- To save the people from the clutches and exploitation by the moneylenders, it is necessary for the banks and co-operatives to extend their lending activities.
- It would lead to higher incomes and improve the condition of the rural poor.
- People can also start a business or set up a small scale industry

45. Why is modern currency accepted as a medium of exchange without any use of its own?

Find out the reason.

Answer:

Modern money has been accepted as a medium of exchange because:

- It is authorised by the government of India.
- It is issued by the apex bank on behalf of the government.
- No other individual is allowed to issue currency.
- The law of the country legalises its use as a medium of payment and setting transactions.
- No one in a country can refuse payment made in the currency of that country.

46. How are deposits with the banks beneficial for individual as well as for the nation? Explain with examples.

Answer:

Deposits with the banks are beneficial to the depositors as well as to the nation in various ways.

Some of them are:

- They provide safe and secure deposits to a person's money.
- They provide excellent saving and investment options and also help in the growth of the nation.
- They provide interests on the deposited money to the depositors.
- Money can be easily withdrawn from the banks as and when required by the depositors.
- They provide easy loans on nominal rates that make it possible for the common man to build their own assets.

47. What are Self-Help Groups? How are they emerging as an important source of credit?

Explain.

Answer:

Self-Help Groups are a group of 15 to 20 poor villagers, especially women, who regularly pool money at regular intervals. When a member of the group is in need of money, he/she can get the loan from the group at a low rate of interest.

Self-Help Groups are emerging as an important source of credit because:

- They charge less interest on the loans than what the moneylenders charge.
- All decisions regarding savings and loans are taken by the members of the group.
- The members can take loans from the groups to meet their daily needs.
- If the group is regular in its savings, they can also take loan from the bank. Loan is sanctioned in the name of the group. The group is responsible for the repayment of loan.
- They help borrowers to overcome the problem of collateral.
- They have freed borrowers from the clutches of the moneylenders.

48. How do banks play an important role in the economy of India? Explain

Answer:

Banks play an important role in developing the economy of India by taking the following steps:

- Banks keep money of the people in safe custody to be used by the depositors in future.
- Banks also increase the savings of the depositors by paying interest on the money deposited.
- Banks mediate between people who have surplus and those who need money. This is done through granting loans. People avail themselves of these loan facilities to increase production and income.
- Banks, being the formal source of credit, give loans at a very low rate of interest at flexible terms and conditions.
- Special provisions are made through banks for the upliftment of agriculture and industry like waiving of loans of the farmers.

49. Explain with an example how credit plays a vital and positive role for development.

Answer:

Credit plays a vital and positive role in the following ways:

- It helps people from all walks of life in setting up their business, increase their income and provide support to their family needs.
- It makes it possible for the people to own or construct their own house and get relief from monthly rent.
- People often avail themselves of credit to purchase luxury items like vehicles, A.Cs, etc., which further raises their standard of living.
- It enables us to invest in human resource. People take credit for education, training, etc. which allows enrichment of human resource.
- For example, Salim availed credit facility to meet the working capital needs of production. It helped him to meet the ongoing expenses of production, complete production on time, thereby, increasing his income.

50. Why is it necessary for banks and cooperatives to extend their lending activities in rural areas? Explain.

Answer:

Banks and cooperatives should extend their lending activities in rural areas because:

- Rural poor and farmers have to borrow money from moneylenders at a very high rate of interest. Therefore, the cost to the borrowing is very high.
- A large part of the earnings of borrower is used to repay the loans. Hence, they have less income.
- Sometimes, a higher rate of lending means that the amount to be repaid is more than the earnings of the borrower.
- To save the people from the clutches and exploitation by the moneylenders, it is necessary for the banks and co-operatives to extend their lending activities.
- It would lead to higher incomes and improve the condition of the rural poor.
- People can also start a business or set up a small scale industry

51. What are the two categories of sources of credit? Mention four features of each.

Answer:

The two categories of sources of credit are:

- Formal sources of credit
- Informal sources of credit

The features of formal sources of credit are:

- They charge low rate of interest and the mode of repayment is easy.
- They keep a collateral from the borrowers for granting loans.
- Reserve Bank of India supervises the functioning of formal sources of credit, (id) Urban households are largely depend on formal sources of credit.
- They include banks and cooperatives.

The features of informal sources of credit are:

- They charge higher rate of interest and the mode of repayment is very harsh.
- There is no need to keep a collateral in informal sources of credit.
- There is no organisation to supervise the functioning of informal sources of credit.
- Poor households are largely depend on informal sources of credit.
- They include moneylenders, relatives, friends etc.

52. What is money? Why is modern money currency accepted as a medium of exchange?

Answer:

Money is anything which has common acceptability as a means of exchange, a measure and a store of value.

Modern money has been accepted as a medium of exchange because:

- It is authorised by the government of India.
- It is issued by the apex bank on behalf of the government.
- No other individual is allowed to issue currency.
- The law of the country legalises its use as a medium of payment and setting transactions.
- No one in a country can refuse payment made in the currency of that country.

53. Why is cheap and affordable credit important for the country's development? Explain any three reasons.

Answer:

Cheap and affordable credit is crucial for a country's development because:

- More lending would lead to higher incomes and encourage people to invest in agriculture, engage in business and set up small industries.
- Cheap credit will enable more investment. This leads to acceleration of economic activity.
- Cheap credit would also allow weaker sections of society to access formal sector of lending and get rid of from informal moneylenders.
- Affordable credit would also end the cycle of debt trap.
- Cheap and easy terms of credit would inspire better investment in technology and thus increase competition.

54. "Whether credit will be useful or not, depends upon the situation." Give two different examples in support of this statement

Answer:

The two examples showing whether credit will be useful or not, depends upon the situation are:

- **Chirag** is a shoe manufacturer. During the festival season, he receives an order for 3,000 pair of shoes to be completed in a month. He employs two more workers for pasting and stitching. He takes an advance payment from a large trader for 1,000 pair of shoes. He asks the leather supplier to supply leather and payment would be made later. Chirag completes the order in a month, makes a good profit and repay all the money that he had borrowed.
- **Sapna**, a small farmer, grows groundnut in her three acres of land. She took a loan from the moneylender, hoping to repay the loan, once the crop is harvested. Being hit by the pest, the crop fails. Expensive pesticides did not make any difference. Sapna is unable to repay the moneylender and the other year, it becomes a bigger amount. Next year again, she took a loan for cultivation. It is not a bumper crop this year too. Sapna earns little, but it is not enough to repay the old loans. She had to sell a part of the land to repay the loan. She is caught in a debt. This situation is called debt-trap.
- Hence, we can say that it depends on situation whether credit will be useful or not.

55. Which government body supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans in India?

Explain its functioning.

Answer:

Reserve Bank of India supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans in India.

- It issues currency notes on behalf of the central government.
- It issues guidelines for fixing rate of interest on deposits and lending by banks.,,
- It ensures that banks should maintain a minimum cash balance out of the deposits they receive.
- It ensures that the banks should give loans not only to profit making businesses but also to poor people and small traders.
- Periodically, the banks have to submit a report to the RBI on how much they are lending, to whom and at what interest rate.

56. Describe any four advantages of Self-Help Groups for the poor.

Answer:

The advantages of Self-Help Groups for the poor are:

- They help the poor to become self-reliant in terms of savings and generating income as the decisions regarding savings are taken by the group members.
- They avail the facilities of loans from formal sources like banks at low rate of interest.
- They create self-employment opportunities by discussion within their group.
- They make it possible for the poor to avail timely finance without any collateral.

57. Explain two points of differences between formal and informal sources of credit.

Answer:

Formal Sources of Credit	Informal Sources of Credit
<p>(a) RBI supervises the functioning of formal sources of credit.</p> <p>(b) They charge lower rates of interest.</p> <p>(c) Their main motive is social welfare.</p> <p>(d) These loans are generally provided by banks and cooperatives.</p>	<p>(a) There is no organisation which supervises the credit activities of these sources.</p> <p>(b) They charge higher rates of interest.</p> <p>(c) Their main motive is profit-making.</p> <p>(d) These loans are provided by money-lenders, traders, relatives, friends etc.</p>

58. Explain any four terms of credit with examples.

Answer:

The four terms of credit are:

- **Interest rate.** The borrower has to pay a sum of money as interest along with the principal amount.
- **Collateral.** It is an asset that the borrower owns and uses this as a guarantee – to the lender until the loan is repaid.
- **Documentation.** Proper documents of borrowing with all the terms and conditions must be submitted.
- **Mode of repayment.** The mode through which the borrower will repay the loan must be clearly mentioned. Long-term loans can be repaid in annual, half yearly or monthly installments.

59. How does the use of money make exchange of things easier? Explain with examples.

Answer:

Money is used as a medium of exchange because it serves as a common medium through which people can carry out buying and selling. Use of money makes economic activities independent of each other. At the same time, it removes the inconvenience caused by the barter system.

For example, a person wants to sell sugar and buy wheat. He has to look for a person who wants sugar and has wheat to sell. In contrast, if in an economy, where money is used, the person who wants to sell sugar only has to look for a buyer for his sugar. The money which he will get can be used to purchase the wheat or any other commodity in the market. Since, money is used in the exchange process it is called a medium of exchange.

Let us take an example of a farmer who wants to sell wheat and wants to buy goat in lieu of that. If he opts for barter system, he will have to search a person who may be interested in giving off his goat and in taking wheat. But finding such a person can be difficult and time-consuming. On the other hand, if the farmer sells wheat and takes money for that, he can easily go and purchase goat with that money.

60. Why are the deposits in the banks called ‘demand deposits’? What are the benefits of deposits with the banks?

Answer:

People deposit the surplus or extra money in the banks. The banks keep the money safe and provide interest on it. The deposits can be drawn at any time on demand by the depositors. That is why they are called demand deposits.

The benefits of deposits with the banks are:

- They can be encashed by issuing cheques in the name of the person to whom the payment is to be made.
- They make it possible to directly settle payments without the use of cash.
- Since demand drafts/cheques are widely accepted as a means of payment along with currency, they constitute money in the modern economy.

61. Question 5: Why do we need to expand formal sources of credit in India?

Answer: We need to expand formal sources of credit in India for many reasons:

- Compared to formal lenders, most of the informal lenders charge much higher interest rates on loans like 3% to 5% per month i.e. 36% a year.
- Besides the high interest rate, informal lenders impose various other tough conditions. For example, they make the farmers promise to sell the crop to him at a low price. There is no such condition in formal sector.
- Informal lenders do not treat well with the borrowers. On the other hand, there is no such situation no such situation in the formal sector.
- The Reserve Bank of India supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans. In contrast, there no organization which supervises the credit activities of lenders in the informal sector.
- Loans taken by poor people from informal lenders sometimes, lead them to debt-trap because of high interest rate.
- The formal sources of credit in India still meets only about half of the total credit needs of the rural people.

So, it is necessary that the formal sources of credit expand their lending especially in rural areas, so that the dependence on informal sources of credit reduces as this will also help in the development of the country.

62. How does credit plays a vital and positive role? Explain with suitable example.

Answer:

Credit plays a vital and positive role in the following ways:

- It helps people from all walks of life in setting up their business, increase their income and provide support to their family needs.
- It makes it possible for the people to own or construct their own house and get relief from monthly rent.
- People often avail themselves of credit to purchase luxury items like vehicles, A.Cs, etc., which further raises their standard of living.
- It enables us to invest in human resource. People take credit for education, training, etc. which allows enrichment of human resource.
- For example, Salim availed credit facility to meet the working capital needs of production. It helped him to meet the ongoing expenses of production, complete production on time, thereby, increasing his income.

GLOBALISATION AND THE INDIAN ECONOMY

VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [1 MARK]

1. In which two different forms do we participate in the market?

Answer: We participate in the market as producers and consumers.

2. What is multinational corporation?

Answer: A multinational corporation is a company that owns or controls the production of its goods in more than one country.

3. Define the term investment.

Answer: An investment is an asset or item that is purchased with the hope that it will generate income in future.

4. Give the meaning of globalisation.

Answer: Globalisation means integrating the economy of a country with the economies of other countries under conditions of free flow of trade, capital and movement of persons across borders.

5. Why had the Indian Government put barriers to foreign trade and foreign investment after independence? State any one reason.

Answer: To protect the producers within the country from foreign competition.

6. What is the meaning of investment?

Answer: The money that is spent to buy assets such as land, building, machines and other equipments is called investment.

7. What is meant by trade barrier?

Answer: It refers to the various restrictions which are used by the government of a country to increase or decrease foreign trade such as tax on imports.

8. Why did the Indian government remove barriers to a large extent on foreign trade and foreign investment?

Answer: The Indian government realised that its domestic industries had established themselves and it was the proper time to face competition and improve the quality of production. So, barriers on foreign trade and investment were removed.

9. Differentiate between investment and foreign investment.

Answer: The money that is spent to buy assets such as land, building, machines etc. is called investment whereas investment made by a MNC to buy such assets is called foreign investment.

10. What is foreign investment?

Answer. Investment made by MNCs is called foreign investment.

11. Due to what reason are the latest models of different items available within our reach?

Answer: Globalisation

12. How are the MNCs spreading their production across the globe?

Answer. MNCs are spreading their production across the globe by setting up partnerships with local companies, by using the local companies for supplies and by closely competing with local companies or buying them up.

13. Why do MNCs set up their offices and factories in those regions where they get cheap labour and other resources?

Answer: MNCs set up their offices and factories in those regions where they get cheap labour and other resources because they bring down the cost of production and ensure more profits for themselves.

SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [3 MARKS]

14. Explain how globalisation can be made fairer.

Answer: Globalisation can be made fairer in the following ways:

- Policies should be made in such a way that they protect the interests of not only the rich and prosperous producers but also the workers.
- The government can negotiate with World Trade Organisation for fairer rules and can align with developing countries to stand against the domination of developed countries.
- Equal space should be provided to both developed and developing economies to explore the market and compete.

15. Give the meaning of WTO. Mention any two shortcomings of WTO. Answer: WTO stands for World Trade Organisation which was started at the initiative of developed countries to liberalise international trade.

Answer: The shortcomings of WTO are:

- It is dominated by the developed countries who manipulate its policies to favour their interest, thus ignoring the developing countries.
- It was supposed to allow free trade, but the developed countries have unfairly retained trade barriers whereas it forced the developing countries to remove the trade barriers.

16. What is a trade barrier? Why did the Indian government put trade barriers after Independence? Explain.

Answer: Trade barriers are the restrictions that are imposed by the government on free import and export activities so as to protect its producers and entrepreneurs.

The Indian government put barriers on foreign trade and foreign investment after independence because:

- It was considered necessary to protect the producers within the country from foreign competition.
- In 1950s and 1960s, the industries were in nascent stage and competition from imports at that stage would not have allowed these industries to develop.
- Therefore, India allowed the imports of only essential items like machinery, fertilizers, petroleum etc.

17. Explain with three examples how top Indian companies have benefitted from globalisation.

Answer: The top Indian companies have benefitted from globalisation in the following ways:

- They have been able to survive in the international competition.
- They have invested in newer technology and production methods and raised their production standards.
- They also have gained from successful collaborations with foreign companies.
- Many of them have emerged as multinationals themselves such as Tata Motors and Asian Paints.
- It has provided them new opportunities for expansion and value addition of their services. (any three)

18. What are the harmful effects of MNCs to a host country? Give three examples.

Answer: The harmful impacts of MNCs to a host country are:

- They can hamper the growth of local industries by giving them tough competition.

- They generally use capital intensive techniques which may not be suitable for a developing country like India, where unemployment is a big problem.
 - They may misuse the environment of the host country by over exploiting its natural resources.
- 19. “Information and communication technology has played a major role in spreading out products and services across countries.” Support the statement.**
- Answer:** Information and communication technology has played a major role in spreading out products and services across countries. In recent years, technology in the areas of telecommunication facilities (telegraph, telephone including mobile phone) are used to contact one another around the world. For example, a news magazine published for London readers is to be designed and printed in India. The text is sent through the internet to Delhi office. Design of the magazine is also sent to Delhi from London office using telecommunication facilities. The design is done on a computer. After printing, the magazines are sent to London by air. The payment for the services from London to Delhi is done instantly through the internet (e-banking).
- 20. Explain the role of government in- making globalisation fair.**
- Answer:** Government can play an important role in making globalisation fair in the following ways:
- Policies should be made in such a way that they protect the interests of not only the rich and prosperous producers but also the workers.
 - Labour laws should be properly implemented favouring the workers so that their basic rights like sustainable wages, better working conditions, health etc. are not hampered.
 - Efforts should be made to protect the small producers from international competition and prepare a stage for their survival.
- 21. What is the meaning of SEZ? Mention any two features of SEZ.**
- Answer:** Special Economic Zones. These are designated areas in a region set up by the government to attract foreign companies to invest in their countries.
- The features of Special Economic Zones are:
- The companies who set up production units in these areas are exempted from paying taxes for an initial period of five years.
- These areas are provided with best infrastructural facilities like roads, water, transportation, communication, markets etc.
- 22. What would happen if Government of India puts heavy tax on import of Chinese toys? Explain any three points.**
- Answer:**
- If Government of India puts heavy tax on import of Chinese toys, then
- (a) the Chinese toys will become expensive and maybe people will not buy them and, thus, the Chinese toys will lose their market in India.
 - (b) people in India, will buy local made goods (toys) and the local industries will get a boost and their sale will also go up.
 - (c) as there would be greater demand of Indian goods, the Indian manufacturers, then, will earn more profits and workers will get more employment.
- 23. How has foreign trade been integrating markets of different countries in the world? Explain with examples.**
- Answer:** Foreign trade integrates the markets of different countries as:
- It provides an opportunity for both producers and consumers to reach beyond the markets of their own country.
 - Producers now compete with markets located in other countries.
 - There is an expansion of choice of goods beyond the domestic market.

For example, during the Diwali season, buyers in India have the option of buying either Indian or Chinese decorative lights and bulbs. The Chinese manufacturers get the opportunity to expand their business.

24. “The impact of globalisation has not been visualised uniformly among producers and workers.” Support the statement with facts.

Answer: Everyone has not benefitted from globalisation. While people with education, skill and wealth have made the best use of the opportunities offered by globalisation, the others have not shared the benefits. While producers have become MNCs, the workers are facing many problems. Globalisation and competition among producers have changed the life of the workers. Most employers want to employ workers flexibly which means: jobs are no longer secure. Earlier workers were employed permanently. Now, they employ the workers temporarily, when there is pressure of work, otherwise they are dismissed.

25. How do multinational companies manage to keep the cost of production of their goods low? Explain with examples.

Answer: The multinational companies manage to keep the cost of production of their goods low in the following ways:

- They set up production jointly with some of the local companies of these countries. For example, Ford Motors spent Rs. 21700 crores to set up a large plant near Chennai in collaboration with Mahindra and Mahindra. In India, labour and transportation cost is very low which cuts down the cost of production.
- They buy up local companies and expand production. For example, Cargill Foods, a large American MNC bought Parakh Foods. The company got ready made infrastructure. As production increases, cost comes down.
- They place orders for production with small producers. They purchase garments, footwear, sports goods and sell them under their brand name.

26. How are local companies benefited by collaborating with multinational companies? Explain with examples.

Answer: The local companies are benefited by collaborating with multinational companies in the following ways:

- They provide money to the local companies for additional investments like buying new machines to replace the old ones.
- They bring the latest technology for production.
- They may build new stores and office buildings, thus providing employees with modern surroundings.

27. Why had Indian government put barriers to foreign trade and foreign investment after independence? Explain.

Answer: The Indian government put barriers on foreign trade and foreign investment after independence because:

- It was considered necessary to protect the producers within the country from foreign competition.
- In 1950s and 1960s, the industries were in nascent stage and competition from imports at that stage would not have allowed these industries to develop.
- Therefore, India allowed the imports of only essential items like machinery, fertilizers, petroleum etc.

28. Why have the barriers on foreign trade and foreign investment been removed to a large extent by the Indian government? Explain.

Answer:

In 1991, the Indian government decided that the time has come for Indian producers to compete

with producers around the world. It felt that foreign competition would improve the quality of goods produced by Indian producers within the country.

Thus, barriers on foreign trade and foreign investment were removed to a large extent. It meant goods could be imported or exported easily and foreign companies could set up factories and offices in India.

29. How have markets been transformed in recent years? Explain with examples.

Answer:

The advent of globalisation and the policy of liberalization have opened the market to the world players. It has given rise to wide choice of goods and services to the consumer.

MNCs have played a vital role in the world market. Foreign trade and investment in the country has increased. It has also resulted in exchange of technology between countries. In recent times, technology in the areas of telecommunications, computers and internet has been changing rapidly. Globalisation has also created new opportunities for companies providing services, particularly those involving in IT. Better job opportunities for people have given rise to migration.

Globalisation has also enabled some large Indian companies to emerge as multinationals. For example, Tata Motors, Infosys, Ranbaxy have expanded their operations around the world.

30. How did ‘Cargill Foods’ become the largest producer of edible oils in India? Explain.

Answer: Cargill Foods, a very large American MNC, bought Parakh foods, which had a large marketing network in many parts of India. It was a well reputed company. It had four oil refineries, whose control passed to Cargill Foods. Cargill Foods is, now, the largest producer of edible oil in India, with a capacity of making 5 million pouches daily.

31. Why did Ford Motors want to develop Ford India as a component supplying base for its other plants across the globe? Explain.

Answer: Ford Motors wanted to develop Ford India as a component supplying base for its other plants across the globe because:

- Ford Motors was selling 27,000 cars in the Indian market and 24,000 cars were exported from India to South Africa, Mexico and Brazil. India was making components and know how to produce them, so they could be easily manufactured and sent across the globe.
- Sending components from India to other plants will reduce the time in manufacturing the components and the orders could be placed immediately. Same plants would not need to be set up at all locations.

32. “Foreign trade integrates the markets in different countries.” Support the statement with arguments.

Answer: Foreign trade integrates the markets of different countries as:

- (a) It provides an opportunity for both producers and consumers to reach beyond the markets of their own country.
- (b) Producers now compete with markets located in other countries.
- (c) There is an expansion of choice of goods beyond the domestic market.
- (d) For example, during the Diwali season, buyers in India have the option of buying either Indian or Chinese decorative lights and bulbs. The Chinese manufacturers get the opportunity to expand their business.

33. “Technology has stimulated the globalisation process.” Support the statement with examples.

Answer: Technology has stimulated the process of globalisation in the following ways:

- Transportation technology has witnessed several improvements in past fifty years. This has made much faster delivery of goods across long distances possible at lower costs, such as use of containers have led to huge reduction in port handling costs and increased the speed with

which exports can reach markets. Also, the cost of air transport has fallen. Ultimately, it has stimulated the globalisation process.

- Telecommunication has also shown remarkable development. Computers, internet, e-mail, voice-mail, etc. are used intensively to contact one another around the world.
- There has been a remarkable development in information and communication technology. It has enabled to access information instantly and communicate even in the remotest areas. Call centres use this to satisfy their customers abroad or provide outsourcing services from anywhere.

34. ‘Barriers on foreign trade and foreign investment were removed to a large extent in India since 1991.’ Justify the statement.

Answer: In 1991, the Indian government decided that the time has come for Indian producers to compete with producers around the world. It felt that foreign competition would improve the quality of goods produced by Indian producers within the country.

Thus, barriers on foreign trade and foreign investment were removed to a large extent. It meant goods could be imported or exported easily and foreign companies could set up factories and offices in India.

35. “A wide ranging choice of goods are available in the Indian markets.” Support the statement with examples in context of globalisation.

Answer: The Indian market has been transformed in recent years. The consumers have a wide variety of goods and services to choose from, which were not available earlier. For example: The latest models of mobile phones, television, digital cameras of leading manufacturers and other well known brands of the world are easily available in the markets.

New models of cars and automobiles are launched every season.

The top companies in the world have introduced their popular brands in India for various products like shirts, fruit juices, cosmetics, toys, furniture, stationery etc.

All this has been possible only due to globalisation.

36. “Globalisation and greater competition among producers has been of advantageous to consumers.” Justify the statement with examples.

Answer: Globalisation and greater competition among producers has been of advantageous to consumers in the following ways:

- Consumers in today’s world have a wide variety of goods and services to choose from. The latest models of digital cameras, mobile phones and televisions made by the leading manufacturers are available to them.
- Consumers now enjoy better and improved quality at lower prices.
- It has resulted in higher standards of living.
- There has been a varying impact on producers and workers.
- Many top Indian companies have been able to establish themselves as multinational corporations.
- Latest technology and production methods have raised production standards.

37. Why had the Indian government put barriers to foreign trade and foreign investment after independence? Analyse the reasons.

Answer: The Indian government put barriers on foreign trade and foreign investment after independence because:

- (a) It was considered necessary to protect the producers within the country from foreign competition.
- (b) In 1950s and 1960s, the industries were in nascent stage and competition from imports at that stage would not have allowed these industries to develop.
- (c) Therefore, India allowed the imports of only essential items like machinery, fertilizers, petroleum etc.

38. How have our markets been transformed? Explain with examples.

Answer: The advent of globalisation and the policy of liberalization have opened the market to the world players. It has given rise to wide choice of goods and services to the consumer. MNCs have played a vital role in the world market. Foreign trade and investment in the country has increased. It has also resulted in exchange of technology between countries. In recent times, technology in the areas of telecommunications, computers and internet has been changing rapidly. Globalisation has also created new opportunities for companies providing services, particularly those involving in IT. Better job opportunities for people have given rise to migration. Globalisation has also enabled some large Indian companies to emerge as multinationals. For example, Tata Motors, Infosys, Ranbaxy have expanded their operations around the world.

39. How does foreign trade integrates the markets of different countries? Explain with examples.

Answer: Foreign trade integrates the markets of different countries as:

- (a) It provides an opportunity for both producers and consumers to reach beyond the markets of their own country.
- (b) Producers now compete with markets located in other countries.
- (c) There is an expansion of choice of goods beyond the domestic market.
- (d) For example, during the Diwali season, buyers in India have the option of buying either Indian or Chinese decorative lights and bulbs. The Chinese manufacturers get the opportunity to expand their business.

LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS [5 MARKS]

40. What is globalisation? Describe the role of Multinational Corporations (MNCs) in promoting globalisation process.

Answer:

Globalisation: integrating the economy of a country with the economies of other countries under conditions of free flow of trade and capital and movement of persons across borders.

MNCs play an important role in promoting globalisation process in the following ways:

- They serve as agents for the transfer of superior technology. They have provided advanced technology, manufacturing process and improved skills to underdeveloped countries.
- They help in the transfer of capital from countries where it is abundant to where it is scarce.
- They help in building up knowledge base and development of human resources, (id) They help in creating large scale employment opportunities by setting up their branches and subsidiaries.
- The operations of MNCs have a favourable effect on the balance of payments account of the host country.

41. What is trade? Explain the importance of international trade.

Answer:

The exchange of goods among people, states and countries is referred to as trade.

The international trade is important because:

- It helps in exchange of surplus goods with those of deficit countries through foreign trade.
- It helps in improving the quality of domestic goods.
- It contributes to the economic growth of the country by raising income level of the people and increasing foreign exchange reserves.
- It enables a country to import advanced technology of other countries to improve its own production.

42. Describe the impact of globalisation on Indian economy with examples.

Answer:

The impact of globalisation on Indian economy is as follows:

- It has created competition among producers, both local and foreign, which is advantageous to the consumers, particularly the well off. Now, there is a greater choice of goods before the consumers.
- It has enabled many Indian companies to become multi-national companies such as Tata Motors, Infosys and Ranbaxy.
- It has created new employment opportunities for companies providing services specially information technology. A lot of services such as data entry, accounting, administrative tasks are done cheaply in India and exported to other countries.
- New jobs are created in industries such as electronics, cell phones, automobiles and fast food.
- It had a negative impact on small manufacturers. Due to competition, some industries have been hit hard such as batteries, capacitors, plastic toys, vegetable oil etc. A number of units have shut down and a lot of workers, have become jobless.

43. Describe any five factors that promote the Multinational Corporations (MNCs to set up their production units in a particular place.

Answer:

The factors that MNCs take into consideration to set up their production units in a particular place are:

- where it is close to the markets.
- where the skilled and unskilled labour at low costs is available.
- where the favourable government policies looking after their interest are , present.
- where the other factors of production such as raw materials, water, electricity and transport are available.
- where there are standard safety measures for assured production.

44. Describe the major problems created by the globalisation for a large number of small producers and workers.

Answer: The major problems created by the globalisation for a large number of small producers and workers are:

- The small producers or workers either have to compete or perish.
- Small scale industries like batteries, capacitors, plastic toys etc. have been hit hard due to global products and have suffered great losses in their businesses.
- Several small factory units are forced to shut down.
- Millions of workers have gone jobless and jobs are no longer secure.
- It has increased income inequalities among various countries.
- Unorganised sector has expanded. {any five}

45. How are Multinational Corporations (MNCs) controlling and spreading their productions across the world? Explain.

Answer:

The ways in which MNCs controlling and spreading their productions across the world are:

- By directly setting up factories and offices for production.
- By setting up production jointly with some of the local companies of other countries.
- By buying up local companies and then expand production.
- By placing orders for production with small producers of the countries such as garments, footwear.
- By buying mass produced goods of domestic industries and, then sell it under their own brand name at much higher rates in foreign countries.

46. “Fair globalisation would create opportunities for all and also ensure that benefits of globalisation are shared better.” Support the statement.

Answer:

The government can take the following steps to ensure better sharing benefits of fair globalisation.

- The labour laws should be implemented properly and they should get their due rights.
- The small producers should be supported to improve their performance.
- It should use trade and investment barriers efficiently.
- It should negotiate at the WTO for fairer rules.
- It can also align with other developing countries with similar interests to fight against the domination of developed countries in the WTO.

47. Explain any three ways in which multinational companies are spreading their production.

OR

How are MNCs spreading their production across countries? Explain with an example.

Answer:

Multinational Corporations (MNCs) are spreading their production in different ways. Some of them are:

- By buying local companies and, then expanding production. For example, Cargill Foods, a very large American MNC, purchased small Indian company, Parakh foods. Cargill Foods is, now, the largest producer of edible oil in India with a capacity making 5 million pouches daily.
- By placing orders for production with small producers. Garments, footwears, sports items are examples where production is carried out by small producers for large MNCs around the world.
- By producing jointly with some of the local companies. It benefits the local company in two ways.
 1. A MNC can provide money for additional investments.
 2. A MNC can bring latest technology for production.
- For example, Ford Motors set up a large plant near Chennai, in collaboration with Mahindra and Mahindra, a major Indian manufacturer of jeeps and trucks.

48. What is foreign trade? How does it integrate markets? Explain with examples.

OR

How does foreign trade connect the markets of different countries? Explain with example.

Answer:

Trade between two countries is called foreign trade. It may take place through sea, air or land. It creates an opportunity for the producers to reach beyond domestic markets.

Foreign trade integrates the markets of different countries as:

- It provides an opportunity for both producers and consumers to reach beyond the markets of their own country.
- Producers now compete with markets located in other countries.
- There is an expansion of choice of goods beyond the domestic market.
- For example, during the Diwali season, buyers in India have the option of buying either Indian or Chinese decorative lights and bulbs. The Chinese manufacturers get the opportunity to expand their business.

49. What is globalisation? How does globalisation help in interconnection among different countries? Explain with examples.

Answer: Globalisation: integrating the economy of a country with the economies of other countries under conditions of free flow of trade, capital and movement of persons across borders.

Globalisation interconnect different countries by:

- Foreign trade. It leads to integration of markets across countries due to which the latest models of goods like digital cameras, mobile phones and televisions etc. are available in one country.
- Foreign investment. MNCs invest capital in different countries by
 - jointly producing with local companies.
 - buying the local companies.
 - placing orders for production like garments footwear, sports goods etc. with small producers of other countries.

50. How has improvement in technology stimulated the globalisation process? Explain.

Answer: The improvement in technology has stimulated the globalisation process as:

- There has been many improvements in transport technology in the recent years that have enabled faster delivery of goods across the world.
- Development of information technology in the areas of telecommunication like internet has revolutionised the world.
- Use of telegraph, mobiles, fax have enabled faster and easier access to information anywhere at any point of time.
- All these developments have further decreased the cost of their operations favouring the consumers around the world.
- It has opened up horizons for further advancement, research and development of existing means.

51. How has globalisation benefited India? Explain with five examples.

Answer: The impact of globalisation on India are:

- It has enabled some large Indian companies to emerge as MNCs such as Tata Motors, Infosys.
- It has also created new opportunities for companies providing services like information technology.
- Greater competition among producers has been of special advantage particularly to the well-off sections of consumers in the urban areas. They have greater choice and enjoy improved quality and lower prices for various products. Thus, they are enjoying a higher standard of living.
- In these industries and services, new jobs have been created and also the companies supplying raw materials to these industries have prospered.
- Several of the top Indian companies have been able to benefit from the increased competition. They have invested in new technology and production methods and raised the standard of their products. Some of them have gained from successful collaboration with foreign companies.

52. How is the Government of India trying to attract more foreign investment? Explain with examples.

Answer: The government of India is trying to attract more foreign investment in the following ways:

- Government has adopted the policy of liberalisation and lifted the trade barriers to allow foreign investment.
- In recent years, industrial zones called Special Economic Zones are being set up. These areas have world class facilities such as electricity, water, transport, education and recreational.
- The companies setting up production units in Special Economic Zones are exempted from various taxes and duties.
- The government also allowed flexibility in labour laws. The workers in the organised sector are protected by the government laws. The companies in Special Economic Zones instead

could ignore many of the laws and engage workers flexibly for shorter periods, when there is a pressure of work.

53. What is the main aim of World Trade Organisation? Explain its functions.

Answer: The main aim of World Trade Organisation is to liberalise international trade. It says that all barriers to foreign trade and investment are harmful. There should be no barriers.

The main functions of World Trade Organisation are:

- It establishes rules regarding international trade and sees that they are obeyed.
- It provides a platform to member countries to decide future strategies related to trade.
- It administers the rules and processes related to dispute settlement.
- It ensures optimum utilisation of world resources. .
- It assists international organisations such as IMF and 1BPD for establishing coherence in Universal Economic Policy determination. \

54. How has globalisation been advantageous to both the producers as well as the consumers in India? Explain.

Answer:

Advantages of globalisation for consumers:

- They have greater choice.
- Better quality of products are available for consumption due to competition.
- It has reduced the cost of goods and services considerably.

Advantages of globalisation to producers:

- They now have access to international markets for their products.
- They have easier access to foreign investment to enhance their production,
- Collaboration with MNCs have added up their performance and profits.

55. Explain four ways in which globalisation and pressure of competition has changed the lives of workers substantially.

Answer: Globalisation and pressure of competition has affected the workers in following ways:

- Casual workers are hired on contract when demand is high and laid off when demand declines.
- There is no job security among workers.
- They have long working hours and work in the night shifts on a regular basis during peak seasons.
- They are not given any benefits of pension, overtime, medical leaves etc.

56. Explain any three conditions that determine MNCs setting up production in other countries.

Answer: The factors that MNCs take into consideration to set up their production units in a particular place are:

- where it is close to the markets.
- where the skilled and unskilled labour at low costs is available.
- where the favourable government policies looking after their interest are , present.
- where the other factors of production such as raw materials, water, electricity and transport are available.
- where there are standard safety measures for assured production.

57. How do large companies often manipulate the markets? Explain with an example.

Answer: The large companies manipulate the market in the following ways:

- Sometimes false information is passed on through media and other sources to attract consumers. For example, a company selling powder milk for babies as the most scientific product claiming it to be better than mother's milk which although was a false claim.
- Some food items were consumed in India for many years although it is very harmful for the health of people. But through attractive and convincing advertisements in media, it was able

to control the market such as Maggie noddles manufactured by Nestle was found harmful after testing in India in May 2015.

- They may also hide the essential information about the product like expiry date, contents, terms and conditions etc. to keep the consumers in dark.
- Sometimes, the expired products are packed in a new packing and again released in the market.
- It has also been evident that artificial scarcity is created by the producers and the product is hoarded for sale in future at a high price.

58. What has been the impact of globalisation on India? Explain.

Answer: The impact of globalisation on Indian economy is as follows:

- It has created competition among producers, both local and foreign, which is advantageous to the consumers, particularly the well off. Now, there is a greater choice of goods before the consumers.
- It has enabled many Indian companies to become multi-national companies such as Tata Motors, Infosys and Ranbaxy.
- It has created new employment opportunities for companies providing services specially information technology. A lot of services such as data entry, accounting, administrative tasks are done cheaply in India and exported to other countries.
- New jobs are created in industries such as electronics, cell phones, automobiles and fast food.
- It had a negative impact on small manufacturers. Due to competition, some industries have been hit hard such as batteries, capacitors, plastic toys, vegetable oil etc. A number of units have shut down and a lot of workers, have become jobless.

59. What are the benefits of foreign trade to producers and consumers?

Answer: The benefits of foreign trade to producers and consumers are:

- It created an opportunity for the producers to reach beyond the domestic markets, i.e., markets of their own countries.
- It gave consumers a wider choice of good quality goods.
- It helps every country to make optimum utilisation of its natural resources.
- It integrates markets and allows international exchange of ideas.
- It brings in new technology and expertise. Producers use it for production and are able to compete in the international market. (any three)

60. Explain the role of information technology in globalisation.

Answer: Information and communication technology has stimulated the globalisation process as:

- In recent years, technology in the areas of computers, telecommunication and internet has been changed rapidly.
- Telecommunication facilitates including telegraph, telephone, mobile phone, fax are used to contact one another around the world and to get information instantly and to communicate from remote areas.
- All this has been facilitated by satellite communication devices.
- Computers and internet have enabled people to obtain and share information on any subject.

61. How has transportation technology stimulated the globalisation process? Explain with suitable examples.

Answer: Transportation technology has stimulated the globalisation process in the following ways:

- Faster trains connecting every nook and corner of a country and faster planes that cover the distance within a few hours have enabled the faster delivery of goods.

- Improvements done in transportation technology in the past fifty years have also helped in the quick movement of goods. For example, containers carrying goods have led to huge reduction in port handling costs and an increased speed, with which exports can reach markets.
- Reduced cost of air transport has enabled much greater volumes of goods being transported by airlines.

62. Explain the role of technology in stimulating globalisation process.

Answer: The improvement in technology has stimulated the globalisation process as:

- There has been many improvements in transport technology in the recent years that have enabled faster delivery of goods across the world.
- Development of information technology in the areas of telecommunication like internet has revolutionised the world.
- Use of telegraph, mobiles, fax have enabled faster and easier access to information anywhere at any point of time.
- All these developments have further decreased the cost of their operations favouring the consumers around the world.
- It has opened up horizons for further advancement, research and development of existing means.

63. Explain any four ways by which MNCs exercise control on production.

Answer: Multinational Corporations (MNCs) exercise control on production in the following ways:

- By setting up their factories or production units close to markets where they can get desired type of skilled or unskilled labour at low cost along with other factors of production.
- By collaborating with existing local companies of a country.
- By buying the local companies and then expand or control its production with the help of modern technology and capital.
- By placing orders to small producers and selling these products under their own brand name to the customers worldwide.

64. How is foreign trade inter-connecting the markets in different countries? Explain with examples.

Answer: Foreign trade is the main channel which connects the markets of various countries. It leads to integration of markets across the countries in following ways:

- It creates opportunities for the producers to reach beyond the domestic markets or the markets of their own countries such as Tata Motors and Ranbaxy of India have emerged as multinational corporations.
- Import of goods from various countries provides choice of goods for consumers beyond the goods that are produced domestically. Availability of foreign goods like television, mobiles etc. has increased the choice of the consumers.
- Producers of different countries compete with each other although they are thousands of miles away.
- It results in bringing down the prices of commodities which further leads to increase in production and supply. Thus, people have access to cheap products which were costlier earlier.